

BBC

# Speak out

3<sup>RD</sup> EDITION

A1



Anna Richardson

**Workbook**





**B B C**

# Speak <out

**3<sup>RD</sup> EDITION**



**Workbook**

# CONTENTS

	VOCABULARY	GRAMMAR	PRONUNCIATION
<b>1A</b> pp4–5	<i>hello</i> and <i>goodbye</i> ; countries and nationalities	present simple <i>be</i> : <i>I, you</i>	intonation in greetings
<b>1B</b> pp6–7	jobs	present simple <i>be</i> : <i>he, she, it</i>	word stress in jobs
<b>1C   1D</b> pp8–9	the alphabet; common objects	singular and plural nouns; <i>a, an; have, has</i>	the alphabet
<b>2A</b> pp10–11	numbers 11–100; common adjectives (1)	present simple <i>be</i> : <i>we, you, they</i>	word stress in numbers
<b>2B</b> pp12–13	family; people	possessive adjectives	syllables
<b>2C   2D</b> pp14–15	feelings	<i>wh</i> - questions + <i>be</i>	stress in phrases
<b>REVIEW 1–2</b> pp16–17			
<b>3A</b> pp18–19	things; colours	possessive 's	possessive 's
<b>3B</b> pp20–21	desk objects	present simple <i>have</i> + <i>yes/no</i> questions ( <i>I, you, we, they</i> )	sentence stress
<b>3C   3D</b> pp22–23	clothes; shops	likes, dislikes and opinions	intonation
<b>4A</b> pp24–25	food and drink	adverbs of frequency	word stress
<b>4B</b> pp26–27	everyday activities (1); telling the time	present simple: regular verbs ( <i>he, she, it</i> )	third person -s
<b>4C   4D</b> pp28–29	café words	present simple: <i>yes/no</i> questions ( <i>he, she, it</i> )	intonation in <i>or</i> phrases
<b>REVIEW 3–4</b> pp30–31			
<b>5A</b> pp32–33	common verbs (1)	object pronouns	linking with object pronouns
<b>5B</b> pp34–35	verbs of ability	<i>can</i> for ability	<i>can</i> : weak and strong forms
<b>5C   5D</b> pp36–37	common adjectives (2); months	ordinal numbers; dates	weak forms: <i>could you</i>
<b>6A</b> pp38–39	rooms and furniture	prepositions of place	sentence stress
<b>6B</b> pp40–41	places in town (1)	<i>there is, there are</i>	linking with <i>there</i>
<b>6C   6D</b> pp42–43	places in town (2); signs in buildings	<i>the</i>	weak forms with <i>to, of</i> and <i>the</i>
<b>REVIEW 5–6</b> pp44–45			
<b>7A</b> pp46–47	everyday activities (2)	present simple: <i>wh</i> - questions	sentence stress
<b>7B</b> pp48–49	common adjectives (3)	<i>was, were</i>	weak and strong forms: <i>was, were</i>
<b>7C   7D</b> pp50–51	parts of the body	imperatives	word stress
<b>8A</b> pp52–53	common verbs (2)	past simple: regular verbs	-ed endings
<b>8B</b> pp54–55	free-time activities; time phrases	past simple: irregular verbs	silent letters: <i>didn't</i>
<b>8C   8D</b> pp56–57	transport and tickets	<i>want, would like</i>	word stress in prices
<b>REVIEW 7–8</b> pp58–59			

<b>CUMULATIVE REVIEW 1–4</b> pp60–61	<b>CUMULATIVE REVIEW 5–8</b> pp62–63	<b>CUMULATIVE REVIEW 1–8</b> pp64–67
<b>AUDIOSCRIPTS</b> pp68–77	<b>ANSWER KEY</b> pp78–93	



# Lead-in

## VOCABULARY

### international English

#### 1 A Complete the words with the missing letters.

- 1 p \_ z \_ a
- 2 p \_ o \_ o
- 3 b \_ \_ \_
- 4 r \_ st \_ \_ ra \_ t
- 5 p \_ r \_ \_
- 6 c \_ f \_ e \_

#### B Match the words (1–6) in Ex 1A with the photos (A–F).



A



C



E



B



D



F

#### 2 A Write a word or number to fill the gaps.

1	one
2	a
b	four
7	d
8	e
f	ten

#### B L.01 | Listen and write the number that comes next.

- 1 nine
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8

### days of the week

#### 3 A Put the letters in the correct order to make days of the week.

- 1 yudanS
- 2 Traydhus
- 3 danMoy
- 4 rFaidy
- 5 eduTyas
- 6 aSartduy
- 7 snedadWey

#### B Complete the diary with words from Ex 3A.

1	Monday
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	
7	Sunday

### classroom language

#### 4 A Match the sentence beginnings (1–6) with the endings (a–f).

- |                         |                        |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| 1 It's on               | a in English?          |
| 2 Can you               | b know.                |
| 3 I                     | c you!                 |
| 4 What's <i>otobiüs</i> | d page 7.              |
| 5 Thank                 | e don't understand.    |
| 6 I don't               | f repeat that, please? |

#### B Complete the conversations with words from Ex 4A.

##### Conversation 1

Teacher: The activity is on <sup>1</sup> ..... four.

Antoni: Can you <sup>2</sup> ..... that, please?

Teacher: Yes. It's on page four.

Antoni: I <sup>3</sup> ..... understand.

Teacher: Page four in the book. One, two, three, four ...

Antoni: Ah, yes! I <sup>4</sup> .....

##### Conversation 2

Marta: Edu, what's *libro* in <sup>5</sup> .....

Edu: I don't <sup>6</sup> .....

Marta: Simon, <sup>7</sup> ..... *libro* in English?

Simon: It's 'book'.

Marta: Ah, <sup>8</sup> ..... you!

#### C L.02 | Listen and check.

# Lesson 1A

GRAMMAR | present simple *be*: I, you

VOCABULARY | *hello* and *goodbye*, countries and nationalities

PRONUNCIATION | intonation in greetings

## VOCABULARY

### hello and goodbye

- 1 1.01 | Listen. Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

1

<sup>1</sup>Good morning /  
Good afternoon.  
I'm Ben.



<sup>2</sup>Hi / Hello  
Ben. I'm  
Edward.

2

<sup>3</sup>Goodbye /  
Bye Sally!



<sup>4</sup>Goodbye /  
See you!

3

<sup>5</sup>Hi / Hey.  
I'm Adam.



<sup>6</sup>Hello / Hey  
Adam. I'm  
Jodie. Nice to  
meet you.

4

<sup>7</sup>Good evening  
/ Good night  
Yasmin!



<sup>8</sup>Bye / See  
you Laura!

### countries and nationalities

- 2 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- 1 Hi, I'm Tom. I'm .....  
a the US      b American
- 2 Are you from .....?  
a Turkey      b Turkish
- 3 Good morning. I'm Maxime. I'm from .....  
a France      b French
- 4 I'm not British, I'm .....  
a Australia      b Australian
- 5 Are you .....?  
a Brazilian      b Brazil
- 6 Hey, I'm Ximena. I'm .....  
a Mexican      b Mexico

## GRAMMAR

### present simple *be*: I, you

- 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1 from / I'm / India .
- 2 not / from / Poland / I'm .
- 3 you / are / student / a ?
- 4 are / you / South Korean .
- 5 aren't / Vietnamese / you .
- 6 the / you / are / US / from ?
- 7 not / teacher / a / I'm .
- 8 from / you / are / where ?

- 4 The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

- 1 Hello, I Pablo. Nice to meet you.  
a I'm      b I are      c am I
- 2 You not from Japan.  
a You no      b You aren't      c You am not
- 3 You are from Ankara?  
a You      b Are you      c Be you
- 4 Where you from?  
a You are      b Where you are      c Where are you

- 5A Complete the conversation with the missing words.  
Use contractions where possible.

A: Hello, <sup>1</sup>..... Mina. Nice to meet you.  
B: Hi Mina. <sup>2</sup>..... Andressa. Nice to meet you,  
too. <sup>3</sup>..... you from?  
A: <sup>4</sup>..... Yokohama in Japan. <sup>5</sup>.....  
Portuguese?  
B: No, <sup>6</sup>..... I'm Brazilian.  
A: Wow! <sup>7</sup>..... from Rio de Janeiro?  
B: <sup>8</sup>....., I am.

- B 1.02 | Listen and check.

## PRONUNCIATION

- 6 1.03 | intonation in greetings | Listen to the conversations and choose the correct picture.

- |     |   |
|-----|---|
| 1 A | B |
| 2 A | B |
| 3 A | B |
| 4 A | B |

## LISTENING

**7A** **1.04** | Listen to the conversation and choose the correct photo (A–C).

**1** Where are the speakers?



**B** **1.04** | Listen again. Choose the correct alternative.

Name:

Nationality:

City:

Name:

Nationality:

City:

Name:

Nationality:

City:

**C** Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

are from I'm meet not where

- 1** Hello. .... Hugo.
- 2** Nice to .... you.
- 3** .... you a student here?
- 4** Are you .... Paris?
- 5** .... are you from, Emi?
- 6** I'm .... from London.

**D** **1.04** | Listen and check your answers.

## WRITING

**8A** Read the chat messages. Complete the table.

←

**New students**

Ewa: Hello everyone. I'm Ewa I'm from warsaw in Poland. Where are you from

Peter: Hi Ewa, I'm Peter. I'm from Geneva in switzerland.

Noemi: Hello everyone, I'm noemi. I'm also Swiss

Peter: really? Where are you from Are you from geneva

Noemi: No, I'm not I'm from Zurich.

Wang: Hi, I'm Wang. I'm chinese. I'm from Shanghai.

Ewa: Hi Wang. Are you in China now

Wang: No, i'm not I'm in the UK.

name	city	country
Ewa	1 .....	Poland
2 .....	Geneva	3 .....
Noemi	4 .....	Switzerland
5 .....	6 .....	China

**B** Read the chat messages again. Add 7 capital letters, 4 full stops and 4 question marks.

**9** Read the personal profiles. Write chat messages between the three people. Use capital letters, full stops and question marks.

<p><b>Name:</b> <input type="text" value="Meera"/></p> <p><b>From:</b> <input type="text" value="Mumbai, India"/></p> <p><b>Now in:</b> <input type="text" value="New York, USA"/></p>	
<p><b>Name:</b> <input type="text" value="Patrick"/></p> <p><b>From:</b> <input type="text" value="Birmingham, UK"/></p> <p><b>Now in:</b> <input type="text" value="Poznan, Poland"/></p>	
<p><b>Name:</b> <input type="text" value="Nina"/></p> <p><b>From:</b> <input type="text" value="Paris, France"/></p> <p><b>Now in:</b> <input type="text" value="Mexico City, Mexico"/></p>	

# Lesson 1B

GRAMMAR | present simple *be*: *he, she, it*

VOCABULARY | jobs

PRONUNCIATION | word stress in jobs

## VOCABULARY

### jobs

#### 1 Match the jobs (1–6) with the photos (A–F).

1 doctor

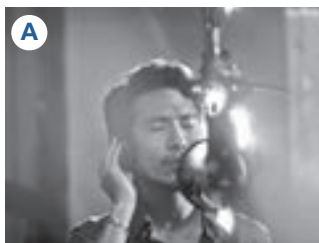
4 taxi driver

2 nurse

5 teacher

3 singer

6 waiter



#### 2 Choose the correct alternative.

- 1 Iulia is a bus **officer** / driver / assistant.
- 2 Yusuf is an office **driver** / worker / player.
- 3 Anouk is a police **officer** / player / driver.
- 4 Paula is a football **assistant** / worker / player.
- 5 John is a digital **driver** / designer / player.
- 6 João is a shop **officer** / player / assistant.

#### 3 Choose the correct word to complete the messages.

< Chat



- 1 Hi! I'm Sylvie. I'm **a / an** artist.
- 2 Hi, I'm Carol. I'm **a / an** businessperson.
- 3 Hello everyone. I'm Miko. I'm **a / an** office worker.
- 4 Hello, I'm Roberto. I'm **a / an** nurse.
- 5 Hello. I'm Seo. I'm **a / an** police officer.
- 6 Hi, I'm Maddi. I'm **a / an** taxi driver.

## GRAMMAR

### present simple *be*: *he, she, it*

#### 4 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- 1 Elsa ..... French. She's from Italy.  
a is                      b isn't                      c aren't
- 2 The Taj Mahal ..... in India.  
a are                      b am                      c is
- 3 David isn't an actor. .... an artist.  
a It's                      b He's                      c Is
- 4 ..... Shola an office worker?  
a Is                      b Are                      c What
- 5 ..... *livre* in English?  
a Where                      b What                      c What's
- 6 Machu Picchu isn't in Argentina. .... in Peru.  
a He's                      b It's                      c She's

#### 5 Correct the mistakes.

- 1 Elena isn't a police officer. She a businesswoman.
- 2 A: Is Anya a nurse?  
B: Yes, she's.
- 3 The Eiffel Tower isn't in Rome. She's in Paris.
- 4 He is a taxi driver?
- 5 Where Diego is from?
- 6 He are from South Korea.
- 7 A: Is Laura a digital designer?  
B: Yes, she are.
- 8 What *lapiz* in English?


#### 6 Use the prompts and *be* to write sentences. Use contractions where possible.

- 1 she / from / Beijing.  
*She's from Beijing.*
- 2 he / a businessperson.  
.....
- 3 it / not / in London.  
.....
- 4 where / Sophie / from?  
.....
- 5 he / a teacher?  
.....
- 6 what / Jack's job?  
.....
- 7 she / not / an office worker. She / a shop assistant.  
.....
- 8 the Colosseum / not / in Milan. It / in Rome.  
.....

## PRONUNCIATION

**7 A**  **1.05 | word stress in jobs** | Listen to the jobs.  
Underline the stressed syllable or syllables.

- 1 a businesswoman
- 2 an actor
- 3 a police officer
- 4 a singer
- 5 a taxi driver
- 6 an office worker
- 7 a nurse
- 8 a shop assistant
- 9 a digital designer
- 10 a football player

**B**  **1.05 | Listen again and repeat.**

## READING

**8 A** Read the blog post quickly. Tick the jobs that the people have.

a digital designer   a doctor   a nurse  
an office worker   a police officer   a student  
a taxi driver   a waiter

**B** Complete the table with information from the blog.

name	nationality	job or jobs

**C** Read the blog again. Are the statements True (T) or False (F)?

- 1 Sandra is Argentinian.
- 2 She's a student at Cambridge University.
- 3 She isn't happy in Cambridge.
- 4 Rob is British.
- 5 He's an office worker at the weekend.
- 6 His job is difficult.
- 7 Kasia is a nurse at a big hospital.
- 8 Her job isn't very difficult.
- 9 Charlie is Italian.
- 10 He is happy with his jobs.



### The question of the day: What's your job?

*Sarah Taylor | Oxford Street, London*

#### Sandra Martínez is from Bogotá in Colombia.

'I'm a student at Cambridge University. It's a great university. At the weekend, I'm a waiter in a French restaurant. I'm very happy in Cambridge.'



#### Rob Marshall is from Birmingham in the UK.

'From Monday to Friday, I'm an office worker. It's not difficult, but the money isn't very good.'



#### Kasia Wójcik is from Kraków in Poland.

'I'm a doctor at a big hospital here in London. My job is very difficult, but it's great!'



#### Charlie Cox is from New York in the USA.

'I'm a digital designer for an Italian company and I'm also an artist. London is a great city and I'm very happy with my jobs!'





# Lesson 1C

HOW TO ... | ask and answer simple questions

VOCABULARY | the alphabet

PRONUNCIATION | the alphabet

## VOCABULARY

### the alphabet

1 A Complete the table with the correct letters.

sound	letter
name /eɪ/	A H <sup>1</sup> <sup>2</sup> .....
three /i:/	B C <sup>3</sup> .. EG <sup>4</sup> .. TV
ten /e/	<sup>5</sup> .. LM <sup>6</sup> .. SX Z
nine /aɪ/	<sup>7</sup> .. Y
no /əʊ/	<sup>8</sup> ..
you /u:/	Q <sup>9</sup> .. W
car /ɑ:/	<sup>10</sup> ..

B Underline the letter which has a different sound.

1 H K S A      3 W O U Q      5 Y V P C

2 N Z U F      4 B G R T      6 L F Z E

C 1.06 | Listen and check your answers.

## PRONUNCIATION

2 1.07 | the alphabet | Listen and write the words.

- 1 .....
- 2 .....
- 3 .....
- 4 .....
- 5 .....
- 6 .....
- 7 .....
- 8 .....

## How to ...

### ask and answer simple questions

3 A 1.08 | Listen to the conversation. Where are the speakers?



B 1.08 | Listen again and complete the information.

#### Student Card

Name:	1 .....
Nationality:	2 .....
Address:	3 .....
Phone:	4 .....

C 1.09 | Write the questions for the answers below. Then listen and check.

- 1 .....  
It's Tanaka.
- 2 .....  
T-A-N-A-K-A.
- 3 .....  
Maika.
- 4 .....  
It's 2 Park Street.
- 5 .....  
It's 629 3301.
- 6 .....  
Yes. It's 629 3301.

## SPEAKING

4A 1.10 | Complete the conversation with the words in the box. Then listen and check your answers.

help moment perfect problem  
right sorry spell wrong

- A: Hello, can I <sup>1</sup> ..... you?  
 B: Yes. I'm here for the conference.  
 A: Just a <sup>2</sup> ....., What's your name?  
 B: It's Elizabeth Browne.  
 A: How do you <sup>3</sup> ..... your surname?  
 B: It's B-R-O-W-N-E.  
 A: Thank you. And your first name ...  
 E-L-I-S-A-B-E-T-H?  
 B: No, that's <sup>4</sup> ..... It's E-L-I-Z-A-B-E-T-H.  
 A: <sup>5</sup> ....., E-L-I-Z-A-B-E-T-H?  
 B: Yes, that's <sup>6</sup> .....  
 A: <sup>7</sup> ....., Here's your name card. The conference is in room seven.  
 B: Thank you.  
 A: No <sup>8</sup> .....

B 1.11 | You are B in the conversation in Ex 4A. Listen and speak after the beep. Record the conversation if you can.

C Listen to your recording and compare it with the model in Ex 4A.



# Lesson 1D

**GRAMMAR** | singular and plural nouns; *a, an; have, has*  
**LISTENING** | my 'top three' things

## GRAMMAR

### singular and plural nouns; *a, an; have, has*

#### 1 A Choose the correct alternative.

- 1 a / an purse
- 2 a / an wallet
- 3 a / an umbrella
- 4 a / an laptop
- 5 a / an apple
- 6 a / an American passport
- 7 a / an mobile phone
- 8 a / an country

#### B Write the plurals of the words in Ex 1A.

- 1 .....
- 2 .....
- 3 .....
- 4 .....
- 5 .....
- 6 .....
- 7 .....
- 8 .....

#### 2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1 have / I / mobile phones / two .
- 2 We / umbrella / have / an .
- 3 has / Teri / bottle of water / has .
- 4 apple / I / in / bag / have / my / an .
- 5 has / three / My / supermarkets / city .
- 6 have / I / keys / my / in / bag .

#### 3 The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

- 1 I'm have £5 in my purse.  
 a I'm  
 b I has  
 c I have
- 2 I have two sandwichs in my bag.  
 a two sandwich  
 b two sandwiches  
 c a sandwiches
- 3 Iggy have a phone and a wallet.  
 a Iggy is  
 b Iggy has  
 c Iggy's
- 4 Didier and Carlos are offices workers.  
 a office workers  
 b office worker  
 c offices worker

## LISTENING

#### 4A 1.12 | Listen to a podcast. Match the speakers (1–2) with one of the pictures below (A–D).

- 1 Ralph .....
- 2 Yolanda .....

#### B 1.12 | Listen again. Complete the table with the words in the box.

British digital designer Manaus London  
 police officer Sheffield Brazilian Washington

	Ralph	Yolanda
nationality	1 .....	5 .....
from	2 .....	6 .....
now in	3 .....	7 .....
job	4 .....	8 .....

#### C 1.12 | Listen again. Are the statements True (T) or False (F)?

- 1 Ralph has two credit cards in his wallet.
- 2 Ralph has photos of his friends in his wallet.
- 3 He always has his laptop with him.
- 4 Yolanda always has a bottle of water in her bag.
- 5 Yolanda has two mobile phones.
- 6 Her bag is from Mexico.

A



C



B



D



# Lesson 2A

GRAMMAR | present simple *be: we, you, they*

VOCABULARY | numbers 11–100; common adjectives (1)

PRONUNCIATION | word stress in numbers

## VOCABULARY

### numbers 11–100

1 A Put the words in the box in the correct order.

nineteen	twelve	eighteen
fourteen	eleven	thirteen
sixteen	fifteen	seventeen

B Match the words with the numbers in the box.

60	80	30	100	50	40	20	90
----	----	----	-----	----	----	----	----

- |             |          |
|-------------|----------|
| 1 eighty    | 5 sixty  |
| 2 a hundred | 6 fifty  |
| 3 ninety    | 7 twenty |
| 4 thirty    | 8 forty  |

C 2.01 | Listen and write the numbers.

- |   |    |
|---|----|
| 1 | 6  |
| 2 | 7  |
| 3 | 8  |
| 4 | 9  |
| 5 | 10 |

## PRONUNCIATION

2 2.02 | word stress in numbers | Listen and choose the correct stress (a–b).

- |            |            |
|------------|------------|
| 1 thirteen | 5 sixty    |
| a ●● b ●●  | a ●● b ●●  |
| 2 eighty   | 6 eighteen |
| a ●● b ●●  | a ●● b ●●  |
| 3 twenty   | 7 fifteen  |
| a ●● b ●●  | a ●● b ●●  |
| 4 sixteen  | 8 forty    |
| a ●● b ●●  | a ●● b ●●  |

## common adjectives (1)

3 A Write the missing vowels (a, e, i, o, u) to make adjectives.

- |         |             |
|---------|-------------|
| 1 n_w   | 5 d_ff_c_lt |
| 2 t_r_d | 6 fr_ndly   |
| 3 g_d   | 7 f_v_r_t   |
| 4 y_ng  | 8 b_t_f_l   |

B Write a word to fill the gaps.

The opposite of **hot** is **cold**.

- The opposite of easy is .....
- The opposite of small is .....
- The opposite of happy is .....
- The opposite of young is .....
- The opposite of good is .....

C Choose the correct alternative.

- I'm very **favourite** / **tired** / **young** today.
- My bike is **friendly** / **young** / **new**.
- My **favourite** / **difficult** / **happy** city is Madrid.
- The mountains in Scotland are **sad** / **new** / **beautiful**.
- Australian people are very **favourite** / **friendly** / **new**.
- My job isn't difficult. It's **easy** / **sad** / **small**.

## GRAMMAR

### present simple *be: we, you, they*

4 A The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

- They isn't American. They're British.  
a are b is c aren't
- Where they are from?  
a they is b are they c is they
- Is Pablo and Jose students?  
a Are b Isn't c Am
- A: Are Sandrine and David married?  
B: Yes, they're.  
a Yes, they is b Yes, they are c Yes, they aren't

B Complete the conversation with the words in the box.

are	from	not	they	they're	where	who	yes
-----	------	-----	------	---------	-------	-----	-----

- A: 1 ..... are they?  
B: 2 ..... my friends, Jaime and Beatriz.  
A: 3 ..... are they from?  
B: They're 4 ..... Mexico.  
A: 5 ..... they from Mexico City?  
B: No, they're 6 ..... They're from Mérida.  
A: Are 7 ..... students?  
B: 8 ..... they are.

C 2.03 | Listen and check.

D Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- A: from / are / Where / you and Zeynep ?  
B: Turkey / We / are / from .
- A: doctors / Jane and Andy / Are ?  
B: they're / No / not .
- A: the bikes / new / Are ?  
B: they're / No / old .
- A: John and Simon / cold / are ?  
B: are / they / Yes .
- A: they / are / Who ?  
B: my friends / They're .
- A: your parents / Are / Australian ?  
B: they / are / Yes .



## READING

### 5A Read the webpage. Choose the correct answer (a–c).

- 1 The Secret Garden is a ...  
a restaurant    b shop    c hotel
- 2 It is in ...  
a Switzerland    b the UK    c Germany

### About us

Hi! Welcome to the Secret Garden. We're Becky and John and this is our hotel! It's in Gimmelwald. Gimmelwald is a small village (only 130 people) in the mountains. The hotel is in an old house with eight rooms.

Hello, I'm Becky. I'm 35 and I'm from Glasgow in the UK. I'm very happy here in Switzerland. The people are friendly, and the food is good. In the winter it's very cold, but the mountains are beautiful. My favourite things in Gimmelwald are the cows on the mountains. They're very happy!



Hi, I'm John. I'm 34 and I'm married to Becky. I'm British too, but now Switzerland is our home. Our jobs aren't easy – French and German are difficult for me. We're very tired at night, but we're happy. My favourite thing in Switzerland is the chocolate. It's very good!



### B Read the text. Select a picture to answer the question.

The Secret Garden is a small hotel. It's in a village in the mountains.

Which picture shows the Secret Garden?



### C Read the webpage again. Are the statements True (T) or False (F)?

- 1 The Secret Garden hotel is in a small village.
- 2 The hotel has six rooms.
- 3 Becky says the mountains are very cold.
- 4 Becky is married to John.
- 5 John is from the UK.
- 6 John says his favourite thing in Switzerland is the friendly people.

### D Find adjectives with the opposite meaning in the webpage.

- 1 sad .....
- 2 hot .....
- 3 big .....
- 4 bad .....
- 5 new .....

# Lesson 2B

GRAMMAR | possessive adjectives

VOCABULARY | family; people

PRONUNCIATION | syllables

## VOCABULARY

### family



**1** Look at the photo. Complete the family words for each person.

Chloe: <sup>1</sup>m\_\_\_\_\_, <sup>2</sup>w\_\_\_\_\_

Will: <sup>3</sup>f\_\_\_\_\_, <sup>4</sup>h\_\_\_\_\_

Chloe and Will: <sup>5</sup>p\_\_\_\_\_

Theo: <sup>6</sup>s\_\_\_\_\_, <sup>7</sup>b\_\_\_\_\_

Elise: <sup>8</sup>s\_\_\_\_\_, <sup>9</sup>d\_\_\_\_\_

Theo and Elise: <sup>10</sup>c\_\_\_\_\_

**2A** Choose the correct alternative.

A: Who are they?

B: They're my <sup>1</sup>sisters / parents / daughters, Maria and Richard.

A: Where are they?

B: They're at our house in France. My <sup>2</sup>sister / father / mother is Colombian. She's from Cali.

A: Is your <sup>3</sup>son / mother / father Colombian, too?

B: No, he's American. He's from Los Angeles.

A: And who are they?

B: That's my <sup>4</sup>sister / brother / children Helen and her <sup>5</sup>father / husband / wife Kerem. He's Turkish.

A: Are they in Turkey now?

B: Yes. They're in Izmir. Their <sup>6</sup>children / daughters / sons are Isabel and Zeki. They're five and three.

**B** **2.04** | Listen and check.

### people

**3A** Correct the underlined mistake in each sentence.

**1** The mens in the photo are police officers.

**2** The girl are in the garden.

**3** Spanish persons are very friendly.

**4** My babies is called Fred.

**5** What's that women's name?

**B** Write a word to fill the gaps.

singular	plural
baby	<sup>1</sup> _____
<sup>2</sup> _____	children
man	<sup>3</sup> _____
person	<sup>4</sup> _____
<sup>5</sup> _____	women

## PRONUNCIATION

**4A** | syllables | Underline the stressed syllable.

- sister
- brother
- husband
- parents
- children
- people
- women
- daughter

**B** **2.05** | Listen and check.

## GRAMMAR

### possessive adjectives

**5A** Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- Jane is an artist and \_\_\_\_\_ husband is an actor.  
a its                      b she                      c her
- My wife is in Poland now with \_\_\_\_\_ children.  
a their                      b its                      c our
- Where are \_\_\_\_\_ parents from?  
a your                      b you're                      c you
- This is my cat. \_\_\_\_\_ name is Mac.  
a It's                      b Its                      c He
- My father is Chinese. \_\_\_\_\_ name is Liu Wei.  
a He                      b Her                      c His
- My husband and I are teachers. \_\_\_\_\_ school is very big.  
a Our                      b We                      c Your
- Marta and Sara are Italian. \_\_\_\_\_ family is from Rome.  
a They're                      b Their                      c They
- \_\_\_\_\_ daughter is seven. Her name is Leila.  
a My                      b I                      c We



**B** Complete the sentences with *my, your, his, her, its, our* or *their*.

- Excuse me! Is this ..... phone?
- Is that your brother? What's ..... name?
- My sister and I are police officers and ..... parents are police officers, too!
- My friend has a pizza restaurant. .... name is 'Perfect Pizza'.
- Kate and Kirsten are sisters. .... brother is an actor.
- My mother is American and ..... father is British.
- My daughter is married. .... husband is Japanese.

**C** Choose the correct alternative.

## About me ...

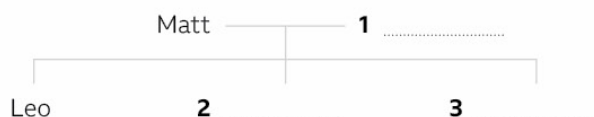
Hi, I'm Rani. I'm a teacher from Johannesburg in South Africa. I have a big family – three sisters and a brother! <sup>1</sup>**My / I** brother is a digital designer. <sup>2</sup>**He's / His** married to an Australian woman and they're in Melbourne now. <sup>3</sup>**He's / His** wife is a designer too. My sisters are students here in Johannesburg. <sup>4</sup>**Your / Our** parents aren't from South Africa, <sup>5</sup>**their / they're** from India. <sup>6</sup>**Her / Our** mother is a businesswoman. <sup>7</sup>**She / Her** company is very big. Our father has an Indian restaurant. <sup>8</sup>**Its / It's** name is the Park Grill. The food is very good!

## LISTENING

**6A** **2.06** | Listen to the conversation. How many children does Matt have?

**B** **2.06** | Listen again. Complete the family tree with names in the box. You do not need all the names.

Amanda Giulia Jennifer Olivia Sofia Soraya



**C** **2.06** | Choose the correct alternative. Then listen again and check.

- The family are in **their garden / a park** in the photo.
- Sofia is **19 / 21**.
- Sofia and Olivia are **students / teachers**.
- Sofia and Olivia are in **Toronto / Vancouver** now.
- Leo **is / isn't** in the photo.
- Leo is a **student / teacher**.
- Leo is in **Italy / Canada**.
- Giulia is **Mexican / Italian**.

## WRITING

a description of a photo; use *and*



This is a photo of my brother Dave and his family on holiday in London. Dave's wife Lisa is Australian and Dave's from the USA. Dave's a doctor and Lisa's a businesswoman. They have two sons, aged five and six. Their names are Otis and Ralph. They're very happy children!

**7A** Read the caption. Find and underline four more examples of *and*.

**B** Put *and* in the correct place in the sentences.

- This is Amelia her son Louis.
- My mum is British my dad is German.
- My bike is new it's very good!
- They have a son a daughter.
- Jack is cold tired.
- Their names are Clare Eddy.

**C** Look at the photo below and make notes on your ideas.

- Names: .....
- Where they are: .....
- Nationalities: .....
- Jobs: .....
- Family relationships and names: .....

**D** Use your notes to write about the photo. Use *and* at least four times. Write 50–80 words.



# Lesson 2C

HOW TO ... | have short conversations

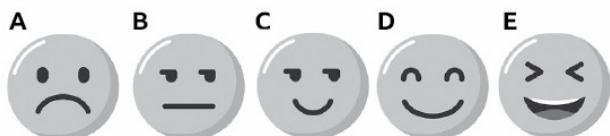
VOCABULARY | feelings

PRONUNCIATION | stress in phrases

## VOCABULARY

### feelings

1 A Match the pictures (A–E) with the phrases (1–5).



- 1 I'm very well. ....
- 2 I'm not very well. ....
- 3 I'm great! ....
- 4 I'm not bad, thanks. ....
- 5 I'm fine. ....

B 2.07 | Listen to five conversations. Complete the conversations with one word in each gap.

#### Conversation 1

D: Hi John, how are you?

J: Hi, Dave. Not <sup>1</sup> ....., thanks. How are you?

D: I'm really <sup>2</sup> ....., thanks.

#### Conversation 2

S: Hey Beth, how are you?

B: I'm <sup>3</sup> ....., thanks. How are you, Sara?

S: I'm not very <sup>4</sup> .....

#### Conversation 3

I: Hello Chris, how are you?

C: Hi Iulia. I'm very <sup>5</sup> ....., How are you?

I: I'm <sup>6</sup> .....!

#### Conversation 4

E: Hey Andrea, how are you?

A: I'm <sup>7</sup> ....., thanks. You?

E: I'm not very <sup>8</sup> .....

#### Conversation 5

R: Hi Emil!

E: Hi Richard, how are you?

R: I'm <sup>9</sup> ....., thanks, Emil. How are you?

E: <sup>10</sup> ....., thanks.

B 2.08 | Listen again and choose the correct alternative.

- 1 Joe has a **black** / **white** coffee with one sugar.
- 2 Kate says she's **tired** / **not very well**.
- 3 Kate / Joe has a new job.
- 4 The people in the office are really **nice** / **friendly**.
- 5 Kate's son is happy with his new **school** / **car**.

C 2.09 | Listen to the recording and write the four sentences that you hear. You will hear each sentence only once.

## PRONUNCIATION

3 A | **stress in phrases** | Match the phrases (1–6) with the stress patterns (a–f).

- |                          |             |
|--------------------------|-------------|
| 1 How are your children? | a ● ● ● ●   |
| 2 It's a beautiful day.  | b ● ● ● ●   |
| 3 No problem.            | c ● ● ● ● ● |
| 4 Thanks for the chat.   | d ● ● ●     |
| 5 How's your new job?    | e ● ● ● ●   |
| 6 See you later.         | f ● ● ● ●   |

B 2.10 | Listen and check.

## SPEAKING

4 A Complete the conversation with the words in the box.

bad chat happy How's later  
see things time

A: Hi Sarah! Good to <sup>1</sup> ..... you!

B: Hi, how are <sup>2</sup> .....?

A: Not <sup>3</sup> ....., thanks. How are you?

B: I'm really good. <sup>4</sup> ..... your new apartment?

A: It's great! We're really <sup>5</sup> ..... with it.

B: Good. Oh, look at the <sup>6</sup> .....! Thanks for the <sup>7</sup> .....

A: See you <sup>8</sup> .....

B: Bye!

B 2.11 | Listen and check your answers.

C 2.12 | You are B in the conversation in Ex 4A. Listen and speak after the beep. Record the conversation if you can.

D Listen to your recording and compare it with the model in Ex 4A.

## How to ...

### have short conversations

2 A 2.08 | Listen to the conversation. Choose the things the people talk about.

- a their families
- b the weather
- c their jobs





# Lesson 2D

GRAMMAR | *wh-* questions + *be*  
 READING | Our family business

## GRAMMAR

### *wh-* questions + *be*

#### 1 A Match the words in the box with the questions (1–6).

an age   manner   a person  
 a place   ~~a thing~~   a time

- 1 What's your favourite colour? **a thing**
- 2 Who's your best friend?
- 3 Where are your family from?
- 4 When is the barbecue?
- 5 How is your sister?
- 6 How old is your brother?

#### B Put the words in the correct order to make questions.

- 1 Nasim / old / How / is ?
- 2 favourite / Jenny's / What's / book ?
- 3 is / our / class / English / When ?
- 4 are / things / How ?
- 5 you / are / Where / from ?
- 6 is / your / Who / football / player / favourite ?

#### C Complete the questions with a question word.

- 1 A: ..... is it the weekend in your country?  
 B: On Friday and Saturday.
- 2 A: ..... are your parents?  
 B: They're very well, thanks.
- 3 A: ..... is your favourite singer?  
 B: It's Adele. She's great!
- 4 A: ..... are Fabrice and Sylvie?  
 A: They're at work.
- 5 A: ..... old is your sister?  
 B: She's 36.
- 6 A: ..... 's in your bag?  
 B: My phone, my wallet and an umbrella.

#### D The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

- 1 A: When are your children?  
 B: They're seven and three.  
 a Who                      b How                      c How old
- 2 A: How is our English class?  
 B: It's in room G03.  
 a When                      b Where                      c What
- 3 A: What are Alexia and Min?  
 B: They're my friends.  
 a When                      b How                      c Who
- 4 A: When time is it?  
 B: It's three o'clock.  
 a What                      b How                      c Where

## READING

### 2A Read the article. Choose the correct alternative.

- 1 The Baxter family have a **restaurant** / shop / hotel.
- 2 It is in **Canada** / Australia / South Africa.

**In the family**

The Baxter family are from Toronto in Canada. We talk to Jyoti Baxter about their family business.

**What is your business?**

We're a family of bakers! We have a small cake shop in Toronto and all the family works here. Our shop's name is Lake Cakes. We have lots of different cakes in our shop and we also have bread, sandwiches and hot pizzas.

**Who is in your family?**

I'm Jyoti. I'm from Australia, but now my home is in Canada. I have two jobs – I'm a businesswoman and the cake shop manager. My husband's name is Tejo. He's a baker. Both of our sons are bakers, too. Their names are Luca and Leo. Luca is 28 and Leo is 23. They are really great bakers, and their cakes are amazing. My favourite is the chocolate and orange cake – it's very good and it's really beautiful! My daughter works in the shop, too. Her name is Saffron. She's 22. She's a shop assistant. She's really friendly.

**Are you happy with your job?**

I'm really happy. Our jobs aren't easy, so we're very tired at night ... but we love our bakery!





### B Read the article. Are the statements True (T) or False (F)?

- 1 Jyoti isn't from Canada.
- 2 They have a big cake shop in Toronto.
- 3 Jyoti and Tejo have two sons.
- 4 Jyoti's favourite cake is a chocolate and apple cake.
- 5 Saffron isn't a baker.
- 6 The Baxters' jobs are difficult.

### C Match the sentence beginnings (1–6) with the endings (a–f).

- |                                |            |
|--------------------------------|------------|
| 1 Jyoti is Tejo's              | a parents. |
| 2 Saffron is Leo's             | b son.     |
| 3 Tejo is Luca's               | c mother.  |
| 4 Jyoti is Leo's               | d father.  |
| 5 Leo is Tejo's                | e sister.  |
| 6 Jyoti and Tejo are Saffron's | f wife.    |

## GRAMMAR

## 1 Put the words in the correct order to make a conversation.

A: <sup>1</sup>Javier / hi, / I'm .

<sup>2</sup>Are / you / too / a / student ?

B: <sup>3</sup>I / am / Yes, .

<sup>4</sup>Marco / I'm .

A: <sup>5</sup>Where / Marco / you / from, / are ?

B: <sup>6</sup>Italian / I'm .

<sup>7</sup>from / Where / you / are ?

A: <sup>8</sup>Spain / I'm / from .

## 2 Choose the correct words (a-c) to complete the sentences.

1 Ana is from Argentina ..... from Colombia.

a She isn't      b He isn't      c It isn't

2 Is Raul a doctor? Yes .....

a he's      b it is      c he is

3 ..... the Eiffel Tower in London?

a Are      b Is      c It's

4 ..... the new teacher from?

a Where's      b Where are?      c What's

5 ..... a police officer?

a Simon is      b Simon are      c Is Simon

6 Is Warsaw a country? No, ..... a city.

a he's      b it's      c she's

## 3 Complete the conversation with the words in the box.

are (x2)    aren't    they    they're    who

A: <sup>1</sup> ..... are they?

B: <sup>2</sup> ..... my friends, Jake and Harry.

A: <sup>3</sup> ..... they students, too?

B: No, they <sup>4</sup> ..... They're artists.

A: Are <sup>5</sup> ..... good?

B: Yes, they <sup>6</sup> .....

4 Complete the text with the correct form of *be*. Use contractions where possible.

My name <sup>1</sup> ..... Joana Neves. I <sup>2</sup> ..... an office worker from Lisbon. I have two sisters and a brother. It <sup>3</sup> ..... big family! My sister Nicola <sup>4</sup> ..... in the USA now. She and her husband <sup>5</sup> ..... doctors. Their children, Jamie and Alex, are twenty and eighteen. They <sup>6</sup> ..... at university. My sister Raquel <sup>7</sup> ..... (not) married. She <sup>8</sup> ..... a teacher at a school in Lisbon. My brother Benito and his wife <sup>9</sup> ..... businesspeople. Their company <sup>10</sup> ..... very big and they have offices around the world. They <sup>11</sup> ..... (not) in Portugal now, they <sup>12</sup> ..... in Germany.

## 5 The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

1 Hello, I'm Tariq. What's you're name?

- a our
- b your
- c you

2 This is my father. Her name is Hugh.

- a His
- b He's
- c He

3 Is that a new restaurant? Yes, it's name is Basil's.

- a their
- b his
- c its

4 Hello, we're new students. Their names are Aisha, Hana and Anton.

- a Our
- b My
- c Her

## 6 Choose the correct alternative.

1 A: Hey Tessa, **what / how / where** are you?

B: I'm great, thanks! I'm on holiday!

A: **Where / How / When** are you?

B: I'm in Turkey.

2 A: **What / How / Who** 's that?

B: It's Freya. She's a new student.

A: **Where / When / How old** is she from?

B: She's from the USA.

3 A: **How old / How / When** is your daughter?

B: She's eight.

A: **When / How old / Where** is her birthday?

B: It's in June.

4 A: **What's / Where's / How's** your phone number?

B: Its 636 2372.

A: And **what's / who's / when's** your address?

B: It's 712 Castle Street.

## VOCABULARY

## 7A Complete the words and phrases.

1 h.....

2 g..... m.....

3 h.....

4 s..... y.....

5 g..... e.....

6 g..... n.....

7 g..... b.....

8 b.....

9 g..... a.....

10 h.....

## B Choose the wrong item in each group.

- |                |            |                |
|----------------|------------|----------------|
| 1 Good morning | See you    | Hi             |
| 2 Goodbye      | Good night | Good morning   |
| 3 Hey          | Hello      | Bye            |
| 4 Bye          | See you    | Good afternoon |

**8A** Complete the sentences with the correct nationalities.

- 1 Josué is from Brazil. He's .....
- 2 My parents are from France. They're .....
- 3 Eunha is from South Korea. She's .....
- 4 My bag is from Turkey. It's .....
- 5 We're from India. We're .....
- 6 Dave and Josh are from the USA. They're .....
- 7 This chocolate is from Switzerland. It's .....
- 8 Khai is from Vietnam. He's .....
- 9 Meera is from the UK. She's .....
- 10 I'm from Germany. I'm .....

**B** Write a word to fill the gaps.

country	nationality
Argentina	Argentinian
China	1 .....
2 .....	Italian
Switzerland	3 .....
4 .....	British
Vietnam	5 .....

**9** Match the sounds (1-7) with the groups of letters (a-g).

- 1 /eɪ/ (name)
  - 2 /i:/ (three)
  - 3 /əʊ/ (no)
  - 4 /e/ (ten)
  - 5 /aɪ/ (nine)
  - 6 /ɑ:/ (car)
  - 7 /u:/ (you)
- a F L M N S X Z  
b O  
c I Y  
d Q U W  
e B C D E G P T V  
f R  
g A H J K

**10** Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

assistant doctor driver office officer  
player teacher waiter

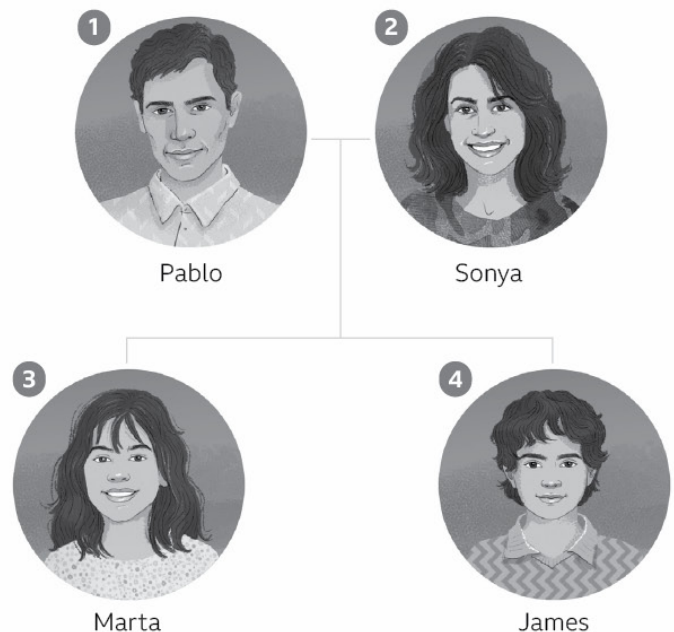
- 1 My friend is a ..... in a big hospital.
- 2 My father is a taxi .....
- 3 Are you a police .....?
- 4 I'm a ..... at a school in Berlin.
- 5 Boris is a football .....
- 6 Mika is a ..... in an Italian restaurant.
- 7 Is Frankie an ..... worker?
- 8 Mateo is a shop ..... at the weekends.

**11** Write the numbers.

- 1 37 **thirty-seven**
- 2 59 .....
- 3 40 .....
- 4 78 .....
- 5 83 .....
- 6 91 .....
- 7 52 .....
- 8 46 .....

**12A** Complete the family tree with the words in the box. There are three extra words.

children daughter father mother  
men people son



**B** Complete the sentences about the family tree in Ex 12A.

- 1 Pablo is Sonya's h.....
- 2 James is Marta's b.....
- 3 Sonya is Pablo's w.....
- 4 Pablo and Sonya are James and Marta's p.....
- 5 James and Marta are Pablo and Sonya's c.....
- 6 Marta is James' s.....

**13** Complete the sentences with the opposite of the adjectives in brackets.

- 1 My new apartment is very ..... (big)
- 2 We're really ..... with our new car. (sad)
- 3 The food here isn't ..... (bad)
- 4 This exercise is very ..... (easy)
- 5 My mother is 93. She's ..... (young)
- 6 It's very ..... today. (cold)



# Lesson 3A

GRAMMAR | possessive 's  
VOCABULARY | things; colours  
PRONUNCIATION | possessive 's

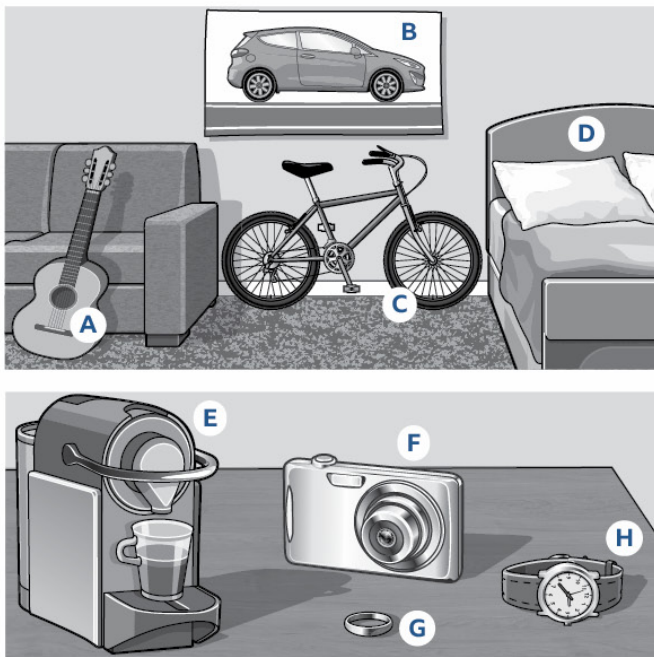
## VOCABULARY

### things

**1 A** Complete the words with the missing vowels to make everyday things.

- 1 c \_ \_ r
- 2 b \_ \_ d
- 3 b \_ k \_ \_
- 4 r \_ \_ ng
- 5 w \_ \_ tch
- 6 c \_ m \_ r \_ \_
- 7 g \_ \_ t \_ r
- 8 c \_ ff \_ \_ m \_ ch \_ n \_ \_

**B** Match the objects in Ex 1A with the objects in the pictures (A–H).



**C** Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences.

- 1 My \_\_\_\_\_ is great. I'm happy with my photos.  
a car      b camera      c coffee machine
- 2 I love music. My \_\_\_\_\_ is old but it's good.  
a watch      b ring      c guitar
- 3 My favourite thing in my house is my \_\_\_\_\_. I love it when I'm tired.  
a bike      b bed      c car
- 4 Akari's \_\_\_\_\_ is very important to her. It's Swiss and it's 100 years old.  
a watch      b coffee machine      c car
- 5 My favourite thing is my \_\_\_\_\_. I use it when I have breakfast.  
a camera      b bed      c coffee machine
- 6 I love my \_\_\_\_\_. I use it to go to work.  
a bike      b ring      c guitar

### colours

**2** Find eight colours in the word snake.



- |         |         |
|---------|---------|
| 1 _____ | 5 _____ |
| 2 _____ | 6 _____ |
| 3 _____ | 7 _____ |
| 4 _____ | 8 _____ |

## GRAMMAR

### possessive 's

**3 A** Put a possessive 's in the correct place in each sentence.

- 1 Hassan new bike is light purple and yellow.
- 2 My father mother is from Budapest.
- 3 Zehra is my friend Berat sister.
- 4 What is Federica phone number?
- 5 Olivia guitar is Spanish.
- 6 Is that Lian new car?
- 7 Antoni watch is Italian.
- 8 Seo-Yeon favourite thing is her cat.

**B** Read the sentences (1–8). Is 's possessive (P) or a contraction of is (C)?

- 1 Where's the new teacher from? C
- 2 Zuzanna's job is difficult.
- 3 Miguel's in Australia now.
- 4 What's her email address?
- 5 Nico's apartment is very big!
- 6 The Taj Mahal's in India.
- 7 My sister's husband is a businessman.
- 8 Our son's name is Eduard.

**C** The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

- 1 Whens Lizzies birthday?  
a When's Lizzies      b When's Lizzie's  
c Whens Lizzie's
- 2 Jans daughter's are teachers.  
a Jan's daughter's      b Jans daughters  
c Jan's daughters
- 3 Its my husband's birthday today.  
a It's my husbands      b It's my husband's  
c Its my husbands
- 4 Sais favourite thing's his new camera.  
a Sai's favourite thing's      b Sai's favourite things  
c Sais favourite things



## PRONUNCIATION

**4A** **3.01 | possessive 's** | Listen and choose the correct **s** sound of the possessive in the underlined words.

- |                              |       |       |        |
|------------------------------|-------|-------|--------|
| 1 My <u>sister's</u> car.    | a /s/ | b /z/ | c /ɪz/ |
| 2 <u>Ilya's</u> guitar.      | a /s/ | b /z/ | c /ɪz/ |
| 3 <u>Beth's</u> camera.      | a /s/ | b /z/ | c /ɪz/ |
| 4 <u>Max's</u> watch.        | a /s/ | b /z/ | c /ɪz/ |
| 5 My <u>daughter's</u> bike. | a /s/ | b /z/ | c /ɪz/ |
| 6 <u>Eloise's</u> ring.      | a /s/ | b /z/ | c /ɪz/ |
| 7 <u>Griff's</u> apartment.  | a /s/ | b /z/ | c /ɪz/ |
| 8 <u>Adesh's</u> bed.        | a /s/ | b /z/ | c /ɪz/ |

**B** **3.01** | Listen again and repeat the words.

## READING

**5A** Read the article. Which of the things in Ex 1A are in the text?

### Favourite things

**Defne Erden, a nurse from Istanbul, Turkey, tells us her top five things.**

My favourite thing is my camera. I love photos and I have a really good camera from Japan. It's black and brown and it's quite big. It's about twenty years old, but its photos are great! One of my favourite things in my apartment is my new picture of the sea. It's from my sister. It's dark blue and green. It's beautiful!

In my bedroom, my favourite thing is my chair. It's my favourite colour, orange. It's from my grandfather and it's about 100 years old. It's not beautiful, but I love it.

My favourite thing in my kitchen is my coffee machine. It's new and it's from Italy. I have two cups of coffee in the morning. I love Italian coffee.

I love music and my guitar is very important to me. It's a beautiful Turkish guitar called a *Baglama*. It's my father's guitar, but now I have it in my apartment. It's old but it's very good.

**B** Read the article again. Choose the correct words (a–c) for each sentence (1–8).

- It's Italian.  
a coffee machine    b guitar    c chair
- It's old and orange.  
a guitar    b camera    c chair
- It's old and it isn't beautiful.  
a picture    b chair    c coffee machine
- It's old and from Defne's father.  
a guitar    b chair    c picture
- It's about twenty years old.  
a chair    b picture    c camera
- It's from Defne's sister.  
a guitar    b camera    c picture
- It's beautiful.  
a picture    b guitar    c coffee machine
- It's blue and green.  
a chair    b picture    c guitar

## WRITING

**write about favourite things; use *and*, *but***

**6A** Read the description. Choose the correct set of pictures, A, B or C.

**A**



**B**



**C**



### My three favourite things!

- One of my favourite things is my bike. I don't have a car and my bike is very important to me. It's blue, green and black. It isn't new, but it's really good.
- I also love my piano. It's from my grandmother and it's very old, about 100 years old. It isn't very good, but it's beautiful.
- Number three is my phone. It's new and it's great! It has a very good camera and lots of apps. I always have it with me.

**B** Choose the correct alternative.

- Our apartment is very small, **and** / **but** we have a big garden.
- I have a bed **and** / **but** a chair in my bedroom.
- I don't have a car, **and** / **but** I have bike.
- I'm from India, **and** / **but** now I'm in Australia.
- I have a phone **and** / **but** a camera in my bag.
- My name is Japanese, **and** / **but** I'm not from Japan.
- Layla's favourite colour is blue, **and** / **but** her watch is black.
- I don't have a sister, **and** / **but** I have a brother.

**C** Complete the description with *and* or *but*.

I have three favourite things. One of them is my camera. It's blue <sup>1</sup> ..... orange. It's an old camera, <sup>2</sup> ..... it's very good. I also love my car! It's new <sup>3</sup> ..... it's very beautiful. It's from Germany. Another favourite thing is my watch. It's my father's, <sup>4</sup> ..... he has a new one, so now I have it.

**D** Write about your three favourite things. Use *and* and *but*. Write 50–80 words.

# Lesson 3B

GRAMMAR | present simple *have + yes/no* questions (*I, you, we, they*)

VOCABULARY | desk objects

PRONUNCIATION | sentence stress

## VOCABULARY

### desk objects

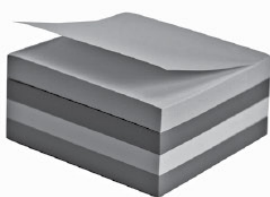
1 A Look at the photos. Choose the correct alternative.



1 headphones / scissors



2 mouse / keyboard



3 sticky notes / notebooks



4 phone / tablet



5 pen / pencil



6 plants / glasses

B Complete the table with the words in the box.

bottle of water cup headphones glasses  
keyboard mouse notebook pencils pens  
plant scissors sticky notes

computer	read/write	other
1 .....	4 .....	9 .....
2 .....	5 .....	10 .....
3 .....	6 .....	11 .....
	7 .....	12 .....
	8 .....	

C Read the description and complete the words.

My desk is small, but I have lots of things on it. I have a <sup>1</sup>c....., a <sup>2</sup>k..... and a <sup>3</sup>m..... I have two <sup>4</sup>n..... and a cup with <sup>5</sup>p..... in it. I don't have any pencils. I have some <sup>6</sup>h....., a <sup>7</sup>b..... of water and a photo of my children. What else? Well, I have my phone and a <sup>8</sup>b.....

D 3.02 | Listen and check.

## GRAMMAR

### present simple *have + yes/no* questions (*I, you, we, they*)

2 A Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1 phone / have / an / I / old .
- 2 pencils / I / any / on / don't / desk / have / my .
- 3 Petr and Jun / any / Do / children / have ?
- 4 some / Vietnam / We / from / have / friends .
- 5 they / any / have / Do / headphones ?
- 6 have / students / any / The / don't / books .

B Complete the conversation with one word in each gap.

A: What <sup>1</sup>..... you have on your desk, Jie?

B: Lots of things! I <sup>2</sup>..... three notebooks, sticky notes, three pens and a pencil.

A: Do you <sup>3</sup>..... a computer?

B: No, I <sup>4</sup>..... I have <sup>5</sup>..... tablet and <sup>6</sup>..... old keyboard.

A: Do you have <sup>7</sup>..... photos?

B: Yes, I <sup>8</sup>..... I have <sup>9</sup>..... photos of my family, but I <sup>10</sup>..... have any plants or books.

**C** Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences.

- My parents ..... two cups of coffee in the morning.  
a do have      b do      c have
- I ..... have any photos on my desk.  
a not      b don't      c do
- ..... have a computer?  
a They      b They do      c Do they
- I have ..... cup with pens and pencils in it.  
a an      b some      c a
- Do you have ..... scissors?  
a a      b any      c some
- A: Do you have a pen?  
B: Yes, I .....  
a have      b do      c do have
- We have ..... old computer in our house.  
a a      b an      c any
- I have ..... plants on my desk.  
a three      b a      c any

## PRONUNCIATION

**3** Listen and underline two or three stressed words in each sentence.

- A: Do you have any scissors?  
B: No, I don't.
- A: Do you have a bottle of water?  
B: Yes, I do.
- A: Do they have a car?  
B: Yes, they do.
- A: Do we have any pencils?  
B: No, we don't.

**B** Listen again. Complete the table.

	Luca	Mia
a book	✓	
a notebook		
glasses		
a bottle of water		
a pen		
a tablet		

**C** Listen again. Are the statements True (T) or False (F)?

- Luca and Mia are both students.
- Luca has no pens or pencils in his bag.
- He has a laptop in his bag.
- Luca's tablet is old.
- Mia is a blog writer.
- Mia has two notebooks in her bag.
- She has a tablet, but she doesn't have a phone.
- Her favourite colour is blue.

**D** Listen again. Complete the extracts from the podcast.

- Hi! I'm Jamie. I have a podcast for young people in New York. Can I ask you some .....?
- I have my phone, ..... headphones, a bottle of water, a book and my glasses.
- I don't have ..... pens or pencils, but I have a tablet.
- It's my work bag and it's very .....!
- I have my phone, of course, my tablet, two notebooks – a ..... one and a blue one.
- I also have some sticky notes in ..... colours and a bottle of water.

## LISTENING

**4A** Listen to a podcast and choose the correct topic.

- When the speakers use their bags
- Where the speakers put their bags
- Things inside the speakers' bags





# Lesson 3C

HOW TO ... | shop for clothes  
VOCABULARY | clothes  
PRONUNCIATION | intonation

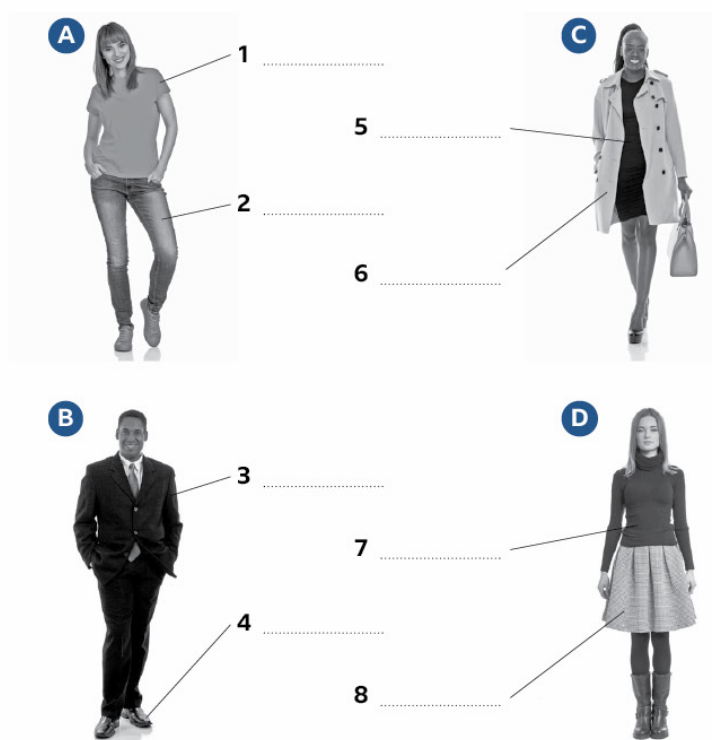
## VOCABULARY

### clothes

1 A Complete the words to make clothes.

- |              |                  |
|--------------|------------------|
| 1 c...t      | 7 s...es         |
| 2 t...       | 8 sh...t         |
| 3 s...t      | 9 s...ir...      |
| 4 j...p...r  | 10 d...es...     |
| 5 ja...e...  | 11 j...n...      |
| 6 T-s...r... | 12 tr...s...r... |

B Label the photos with words from Ex 1A.



C Match the sentences (1–4) with the photos (A–D).

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 | My skirt is red. It's from France. It's old.       |
| 2 | My suit is black. It's new. It's for my new job.   |
| 3 | My T-shirt is orange. It's from my favourite shop. |
| 4 | My coat is blue. It's a good colour for me.        |

## How to ...

### shop for clothes

2 A 3.05 | Listen to the conversation. Tick the clothes you hear.

coat jacket jeans jumper  
shirt skirt top trousers

B 3.05 | Listen again. Choose the correct alternative.

- The jeans are **dark** / **light** blue.
- The jeans are £ **30** / **50**.
- The top is **orange** / **yellow**.
- The top is £ **30** / **50**.
- The top is **big** / **small**.
- The jacket is **blue** / **red**.
- The jacket is £ **50** / **75**.
- The jacket is **large** / **medium**.

C 3.06 | Listen to the recording and write the four sentences that you hear. You will hear each sentence only once.

## PRONUNCIATION

3 3.07 | **intonation** | Listen to the sentences. Do the speakers sound friendly (F) or unfriendly (U)?

- Excuse me.
- How much are the trousers?
- Where are the changing rooms?
- What size are you?
- They're \$25.
- Can I try it on?

## SPEAKING

4 A Complete the conversation with the words in the box.

changing excuse help here medium  
much on over size £25

A: 1 ..... me.  
B: Yes? Can I 2 ..... you?  
A: I like this jumper. How 3 ..... is it?  
B: It's 4 .....  
A: Thank you. Can I try it 5 .....?  
B: Yes, of course. What 6 ..... are you?  
A: I'm a 7 .....  
B: 8 ..... you are.  
A: Great. Where are the 9 ..... rooms?  
B: They're 10 ..... there.  
A: Thank you.

B 3.08 | Listen to the conversation and check your answers.

C 3.09 | You are A in the conversation in Ex 4A. Listen and speak after the beep. Record the conversation if you can.

D Listen to your recording and compare it with the model in Ex 4A.

# Lesson 3D

GRAMMAR | likes, dislikes and opinions  
LISTENING | Where I shop

## GRAMMAR

### likes, dislikes and opinions

#### 1 A Choose the correct alternative.

- 1 A: <sup>1</sup>Do / Are you like pizza?  
B: I <sup>2</sup>love / don't like pizza! It's my favourite food. What about you?  
A: I <sup>3</sup>hate / love pizza. I never eat it. I <sup>4</sup>really like / like really steak. <sup>5</sup>Do you like / You like steak?  
B: No, I <sup>6</sup>don't like / don't.  
2 A: Hi Carl, do you <sup>7</sup>think / like my new jumper?  
B: Yes, I <sup>8</sup>do / like. I <sup>9</sup>think / love it's beautiful. Is it new?  
A: Yes, it's from the new clothes shop in town. I <sup>10</sup>really / very like the colour.

#### B 3.10 | Listen and check your answers.

#### C The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

- 1 We not love big shops.  
a We no love    b We don't love    c We don't loves  
2 I like a lot clothes shops.  
a clothes shops a lot.    b lots clothes shops.  
c clothes shops lot.  
3 A: Do you like bookshops?  
B: No, I don't like.  
a No, I not like.    b No, I don't.    c No, I not.  
4 I like really food shops.  
a I very like    b I like very    c I really like

#### D Complete the messages with the words in the box.

dislike   don't   favourite   hate   love   think

← [video icon] [phone icon] [dots icon]

Tara: Hi Rachel, I'm at the supermarket. Do you want chicken for dinner?

Rachel: No, thanks. I <sup>1</sup>..... really like chicken. What about fish?

Tara: No, Greg and Mi-rae are here for dinner. They <sup>2</sup>..... fish!

Rachel: Oh yes! Do you <sup>3</sup>..... they like steak?

Tara: No, they don't. Pasta?

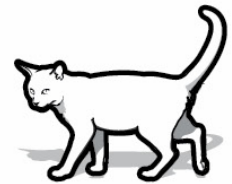
Rachel: No, I really <sup>4</sup>..... pasta. Pizza?

Tara: I <sup>5</sup>..... pizza!

Rachel: Great! It's my <sup>6</sup>..... !

## LISTENING

#### 2A 3.11 | Listen to the podcast. Tick the types of shop you hear.



#### B 3.11 | Listen again. Complete the table with the shops in the box.

bookshops   butcher's   clothes shops  
computer shops   shoe shops   sports shops  
supermarkets

	likes/loves	doesn't like/hates
Eliza	<sup>1</sup> .....	<sup>1</sup> .....
Toto	<sup>3</sup> .....	<sup>4</sup> .....
Yuki	<sup>5</sup> .....	<sup>6</sup> .....

#### C 3.11 | Listen to the podcast again. Choose the correct alternative.

##### Eliza

- 1 I buy / don't buy books online.  
2 The bookshop near my house is big / small.

##### Toto

- 3 I don't really like books / video games.  
4 My favourite shop is a phone shop / computer shop.

##### Yuki

- 5 My favourite shop is a clothes shop / shoe shop called Market.  
6 My new jacket is light / dark green.

# Lesson 4A

GRAMMAR | adverbs of frequency

VOCABULARY | food and drink

PRONUNCIATION | word stress

## VOCABULARY

### food and drink

1 A Match the food and drink in the box with the photos (A–H).

bread a carrot cheese fruit juice  
an orange pasta steak a tomato

A



E



B



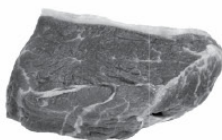
F



C



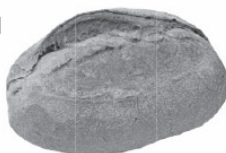
G



D



H



B Complete the table with the food and drink from Ex 1A.

fruit	vegetables	meat	drinks	other
an orange	a carrot	steak	fruit juice	pasta
.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....	.....	.....

C Complete the table in Ex 1B with the words in the box.

an apple a banana beef cereal chicken an egg  
fish milk a mushroom a potato rice a sandwich

D Choose the correct alternative.

- 1 An orange / A banana / A carrot is a yellow fruit.
- 2 Cheese / Chicken / Bread is a meat.
- 3 A tomato / banana / mushroom is red.
- 4 Mushrooms and carrots are fruit / vegetables / meat.
- 5 We make sandwiches with bread / pasta / rice.
- 6 Milk / Orange juice / Water is white.

2 A Complete the food words in the text.

For breakfast, I usually have <sup>1</sup>r..... with  
<sup>2</sup>e.....s and vegetables, often <sup>3</sup>c.....s  
and <sup>4</sup>m.....s. Sometimes I have a cheese  
<sup>5</sup>s..... from a café. I don't often eat fruit for  
breakfast, but sometimes I eat an <sup>6</sup>a..... or a  
<sup>7</sup>b..... . I drink water and I always have a cup of  
<sup>8</sup>c......

B 4.01 | Listen and check your answers.

## PRONUNCIATION

3 A 4.02 | word stress | Listen and underline the stressed syllables.

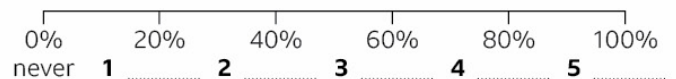
- |          |            |             |
|----------|------------|-------------|
| 1 apple  | 5 cheese   | 9 pasta     |
| 2 banana | 6 chicken  | 10 potato   |
| 3 beef   | 7 mushroom | 11 sandwich |
| 4 bread  | 8 orange   | 12 tomato   |

B 4.02 | Listen again and repeat.

## GRAMMAR

### adverbs of frequency

4 A Put the adverbs of frequency in order.



always often not often sometimes usually

B Choose the correct alternative.

- 1 I don't often / never eat meat or fish. (0%)
- 2 We always / usually have dinner at home. (80%)
- 3 You always / usually have a cheese sandwich for lunch! (100%)
- 4 We often / sometimes have eggs for breakfast on Sunday. (60%)
- 5 My children don't often / often eat chocolate. (20%)
- 6 They sometimes / usually eat pasta for lunch. (40%)

C Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1 often / fruit juice / I / drink .
- 2 I / mushrooms / never / eat .
- 3 cereal / you / Do / usually / breakfast / have / for ?
- 4 fruit / eat / My parents / often / don't .
- 5 always / don't / eggs / eat / Saturday / I / on .
- 6 you / often / rice / have / for / lunch / Do ?
- 7 for / sometimes / Ren and Aoi / chicken / dinner / have .
- 8 always / two / have / in the morning / I / cups of coffee .



**D** The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.


- My family have dinner always at 8 o'clock.  
a have always dinner    b always have dinner  
c always dinner have
- Never I eat meat or cheese.  
a I eat never    b I don't never eat    c I never eat
- They aren't often have bread for breakfast.  
a They don't often    b They not often  
c They often not
- A: Do you usually have cereal for breakfast?  
B: Yes, I usually.  
a Yes, I do have    b Yes, I usually have    c Yes, I do

## LISTENING

**5A** Read the information. Are the statements True (T) or False (F)?

☰
**Food and Friends**
👤

The number-one podcast about what people eat. In this episode, we talk to Adriana Carvalho, a 27-year-old surfer from Brazil.



❤
Share

- Food and Friends* is a TV programme.
- Adriana Carvalho is a swimmer.
- She is Brazilian.

**B** **4.03** | Listen to the podcast. Number the food and drink in the order that you hear them (1–8).

- |           |          |         |
|-----------|----------|---------|
| a cereal  | d fish   | g rice  |
| b chicken | e orange | h steak |
| c coffee  | f pasta  |         |

**C** **4.03** | Listen again. Choose the correct alternative.

- I **eat** / **don't eat** a lot of fish.
- I **always** / **usually** have cereal for breakfast.
- On **Saturdays** / **Sundays** I have Brazilian cheese bread for breakfast.
- I always have a cup of **tea** / **coffee** in the morning.
- I usually have pasta with vegetables and **cheese** / **chicken** for lunch.
- I **always** / **sometimes** have apple juice with lunch.
- I always have dinner with my **friends** / **family**.
- My favourite food is **steak** / **fish** with tomatoes.

## WRITING

**write an email to a friend**

**6A** Read the email and choose the correct answer (a–c).

- What is Lisa's news?  
a She has a new apartment  
b She has a new job  
c She's on holiday in Italy
- Where is Eric?  
a Italy  
b the USA  
c Japan

**B** Complete the email with the words in the box.

hey love questions speak usually well

⬆ ⬇ ⬆
↩ ☆ 📧

1 ..... Eric,

How are you? I'm very 2 ..... and I have some news. I have a new job, in Italy! I'm in Naples now. It's beautiful here.

How is Japan? I have lots of 3 ..... ! First, are you in Tokyo? Do you have a job? Is your apartment nice? Is the food good? What do you 4 ..... eat?

5 ..... soon!

6 ..... , Lisa

**C** Put the parts of Eric's email to Lisa (A–F) in the correct order (1–6).

- A** Speak soon,
- B** The food here is very good. I eat lots of rice and noodles with vegetables. I usually eat chicken or fish, but I don't eat any cheese. My favourite thing is green tea. I drink lots of tea every day! How's the food in Naples? Do you like Italian food?
- C** Japan is great! I love it! I'm not in Tokyo, I'm in Osaka. I have a job in an English book shop. My apartment is small, but it's very nice.
- D** Hi Lisa,
- E** Eric
- F** I'm very well, thanks. It's great news about your new job!

**7** Write an email to a friend in another country. In your email:

- ask how they are,
- give them some news,
- ask about what they usually eat.

Write 50–80 words.

# Lesson 4B

GRAMMAR | present simple: regular verbs (*he, she, it*)  
VOCABULARY | everyday activities (1); telling the time  
PRONUNCIATION | third person -s

## VOCABULARY

### everyday activities (1)

1 A Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences.

- We usually ..... at 9 a.m. at the weekend.  
a go                      b get up                      c have
- I often ..... TV with my family.  
a go                      b have                      c watch
- They ..... home at 8 a.m. on Monday.  
a leave                      b get up                      c start
- Callum and Suki always ..... bed at 11 p.m.  
a go to                      b get                      c finish
- I don't often ..... work early in the morning.  
a go                      b get                      c start
- My parents never ..... dinner for us.  
a go                      b make                      c get up

B Complete the text with the verbs in the box.

finish get (x2) go (x2) have  
make leave start watch

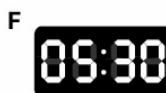
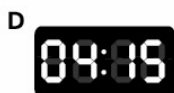
I <sup>1</sup> ..... up at 7 every day. I usually  
<sup>2</sup> ..... cereal and fruit for breakfast and a  
cup of coffee. I <sup>3</sup> ..... home at 8.30 and  
<sup>4</sup> ..... to work. I <sup>5</sup> ..... work at 9 a.m.  
I <sup>6</sup> ..... work at 5.30. I <sup>7</sup> ..... home at  
6 p.m. and <sup>8</sup> ..... dinner for my family. After  
dinner we often <sup>9</sup> ..... TV. I <sup>10</sup> ..... to  
bed at 11 p.m.

C 4.04 | Listen and check your answers.

### telling the time

2 A Match the times (1–6) with the pictures (A–F).

- quarter to seven
- half past five
- quarter past four
- eleven o'clock
- quarter to one
- midnight



B Put the activities (A–F) in the correct order (1–6).

- |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|
| 1 ..... | 3 ..... | 5 ..... |
| 2 ..... | 4 ..... | 6 ..... |

- A 12.30 p.m. – have lunch
- B half past nine – start work
- C 7 a.m. – get up
- D quarter past six – finish work
- E 8.30 a.m. – leave home
- F 11.30 p.m. – go to bed

## GRAMMAR

### present simple: regular verbs (*he, she, it*)

3 A Choose the correct alternative.

- My brother **make** / **makes** dinner every day.
- Jay doesn't **go** / **goes** to bed early.
- The film **start** / **starts** at seven.
- Does Igor **study** / **studies** English?
- Lili never **watches** / **watch** TV at the weekend.
- Jim **don't** / **doesn't** often eat vegetables.
- When **do** / **does** Juan start work?
- A: Does your class finish at six?  
B: Yes, it **does** / **do**.

B The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

- Ben always leave for work at 8 a.m.  
a Ben always leaves    b Ben always does leave  
c Ben always does leaves
- Lena don't usually have breakfast.  
a don't usually has    b doesn't usually have  
c doesn't usually has
- Huw goes to bed early?  
a Do Huw go    b Does Huw goes    c Does Huw go
- Is Javi like cheese?  
a Do Javi likes    b Does Javi like    c Javi likes



**C Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.**

My friend Ying <sup>1</sup>..... (be) a digital designer. She usually <sup>2</sup>..... (get up) at 6 a.m. She <sup>3</sup>..... (not have) breakfast, but she <sup>4</sup>..... (have) a cup of tea and <sup>5</sup>..... (make) a sandwich for her lunch. She <sup>6</sup>..... (leave) home at 7 a.m. and <sup>7</sup>..... (go) to work. She <sup>8</sup>..... (not finish) work until 7 p.m. She <sup>9</sup>..... (get) home at 8 p.m. and <sup>10</sup>..... (make) dinner. After dinner she usually <sup>11</sup>..... (study) English. On Thursdays she has an English class. It <sup>12</sup>..... (start) at 9 p.m.

## PRONUNCIATION

**4A | third person -s | Choose the correct sound of the third person verb endings.**

- |            |       |       |        |
|------------|-------|-------|--------|
| 1 goes     | a /s/ | b /z/ | c /ɪz/ |
| 2 leaves   | a /s/ | b /z/ | c /ɪz/ |
| 3 makes    | a /s/ | b /z/ | c /ɪz/ |
| 4 watches  | a /s/ | b /z/ | c /ɪz/ |
| 5 does     | a /s/ | b /z/ | c /ɪz/ |
| 6 eats     | a /s/ | b /z/ | c /ɪz/ |
| 7 has      | a /s/ | b /z/ | c /ɪz/ |
| 8 gets     | a /s/ | b /z/ | c /ɪz/ |
| 9 finishes | a /s/ | b /z/ | c /ɪz/ |
| 10 studies | a /s/ | b /z/ | c /ɪz/ |

**B 🔊 4.05 | Listen and check your answers. Then listen again and repeat.**

## READING

**5A Read the text. Do Jayden and Katy have the same job?**

**B Read the text again. Choose Jayden (J) or Katy (K) for each question.**

**Who ...**

- works in an office?
- gets up at six?
- has toast and eggs for breakfast?
- has a sandwich for lunch?
- listens to podcasts?
- makes dinner?
- watches TV in the evening?
- works on Saturdays?

**C Are the statements True (T) or False (F)?**

- Jayden has a big cup of tea in the morning.
- He leaves home at half past seven.
- He usually has lunch in a café.
- He has dinner with Katy.
- Katy starts work at 7 a.m.
- She goes to bed after breakfast.
- She gets up at 3 p.m.
- Katy and Jayden make lunch together on Saturdays.

## Working around the clock



Jayden Smith, a businessman, lives with his wife Katy in Texas, USA. He tells us about their typical day.

From Monday to Friday, I get up at six. I have a big cup of coffee and check my emails and messages. I don't have breakfast, but I make breakfast for Katy – usually toast and eggs. I leave home at 7.30 and go to work. I work in a big office in the city centre. At one, I have lunch. I usually have a sandwich at my desk and go on social media or listen to a podcast. I finish work at five and go home. I have dinner with Katy – often pasta or rice. In the evening, I watch TV or read a book. I go to bed at 10.30 or 11.

Katy's day is very different. She's a taxi driver and usually works at night. She starts work at 7 p.m. and finishes at 4 or 5 a.m. She gets home at six and has breakfast, then she goes to bed. She gets up at three and goes to the gym. Then she goes home and makes dinner. We have dinner together before she leaves for work. She works on Saturdays, but she never works on Sundays. On Sunday mornings we go for a walk, then make lunch together and watch a film.



# Lesson 4C

HOW TO ... | order in a café

VOCABULARY | café words

PRONUNCIATION | intonation in *or* phrases

## VOCABULARY

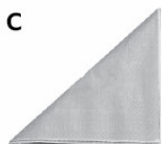
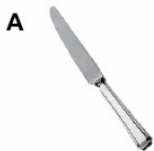
### café words

1 A Complete the food and drink words in the menu.

MENU		
BREAKFAST		
<sup>1</sup> P _str _s		£2.30
<sup>2</sup> S _ndw _ch _s		£4.25
<sup>3</sup> T _st		£2.95
<sup>4</sup> T _st and _ggs		£6.95
DRINKS		
<sup>5</sup> L _tt		£3.00
<sup>6</sup> _spr _ss		£3.00
<sup>7</sup> _m _r _c _n		£2.50
<sup>8</sup> T _		£3.00
<sup>9</sup> Fr _t j _c		£2.50
<sup>10</sup> M _n _r _l w _t _r		£2.50

B Match the words (1–8) with the photos (A–H).

- |              |          |         |
|--------------|----------|---------|
| 1 bowl       | 4 glass  | 7 plate |
| 2 chopsticks | 5 knife  | 8 spoon |
| 3 fork       | 6 napkin |         |



C Choose the correct alternative.

- I usually have tea with **salt** / **sugar** / **pepper**.
- Lin always has a **plate** / **spoon** / **cup** of coffee in the morning.
- Paola sometimes puts salt and **pastry** / **pepper** / **sugar** on her eggs.
- Can I have a **glass** / **napkin** / **plate** of sparkling water, please?
- We always use **chopsticks** / **napkins** / **glasses** to eat our food.
- Jordan often has a **bowl** / **plate** / **fork** of cereal for breakfast.

## How to ...

### order in a café

2 4.06 | Listen to the conversation and choose the correct alternative.

- The customer orders two **cheese** / **egg** and tomato sandwiches.
- He wants **brown** / **white** bread.
- He orders **one coffee** / **two coffees**.
- The pastries are **£2.20** / **£2.50**.
- The customer orders a **still** / **sparkling** mineral water.
- It is **£19.15** / **£19.50**.

## PRONUNCIATION

3 A 4.07 | intonation in *or* phrases | Listen and choose the questions with the correct intonation.

- |                       |                    |
|-----------------------|--------------------|
| 1 Tea or coffee?      | 4 Brown or white?  |
| 2 Still or sparkling? | 5 Apple or orange? |
| 3 Espresso or latte?  | 6 Small or large?  |

B 4.08 | Listen to the questions and repeat.

## SPEAKING

4 A 4.09 | Complete the conversation with the words in the box. Then listen and check.

anything breakfast chocolate mineral moment  
much sandwiches sparkling sugar tea

- A: Can I help you?  
 B: Yes, what are the <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ specials?  
 A: We have pastries or <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ with tea or coffee.  
 B: Thank you. Can I have a pastry, please?  
 A: Fruit or <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_?  
 B: Fruit, please.  
 A: <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ or coffee?  
 B: Coffee, please.  
 A: With milk and <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_?  
 B: Just milk, thank you.  
 A: <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ else?  
 B: Yes, can I have a <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ water, please?  
 A: Still or <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_?  
 B: Still, please. How <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ is that?  
 A: Just a <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. Let me check. That's £8.  
 B: Thanks.

B 4.10 | You are B in Ex 4A. Listen and speak after the beep. Record the conversation if you can.

C Listen to your recording and compare it with Ex 4A.





# Lesson 4D

GRAMMAR | present simple: *yes/no* questions: (*he, she, it*)

READING | An amazing job

## GRAMMAR

### present simple: *yes/no* questions (*he, she, it*)

#### 1 A Put the words in the correct order to make questions.

- 1 animals / like / Does / Akira ?
- 2 make / Does / dinner / Mark ?
- 3 your / a job / son / have / Does ?
- 4 Sandra / you / live / near / Does ?
- 5 have / Does / Kian / children ?
- 6 eggs / Diana / Does / breakfast / eat / for ?
- 7 class / French / Does / the / at / start / nine ?
- 8 office / work / Elias / in / Does / an ?

#### B Match the questions (1–8) in Ex 1A with the answers (a–h).

- a No, she doesn't. She eats cereal.
- b No, he doesn't. I always make it!
- c Yes, he does. He has a son and a daughter.
- d Yes, she does. Her favourite animals are birds.
- e No, he doesn't. He works outdoors.
- f Yes, he does. He's an office worker.
- g No, she doesn't. She lives in Vietnam.
- h No, it doesn't. It starts at 10.

#### C Choose the correct alternative.

- 1 Do / Does / Are your daughter like cats?
- 2 Do / Is / Does you usually get up early?
- 3 Is / Are / Does your trousers new?
- 4 Does / Is / Are the class start at 8 a.m.?
- 5 Are / Is / Do it Friday tomorrow?
- 6 Does / Do / Is Tadashi have a job?
- 7 Are / Do / Does they eat rice for lunch?
- 8 Are / Does / Do your wife work on Saturdays?

## READING

### 2 A Read the article. Which of the animals and places below does it mention?



A lion



D monkey



B sea



E snake



C jungle



F lake

### B Read the article again. Match the parts of the article (1–6) with the questions (a–f).

- a What's your favourite place?
- b Where do you work?
- c What's the best thing about your job?
- d What's your favourite animal?
- e What's your job?
- f What's your daily routine?

### C Read the article again. Are the statements True (T) or False (F)?

- 1 Marina visits lots of different places.
- 2 She never works in cities.
- 3 She doesn't do the same things every day.
- 4 She never works indoors.
- 5 She loves the colours of the animals in the jungle.
- 6 She thinks big cats are friendly.

# Amazing jobs

This week we meet Marina Santos,  
a photographer from Quito, Ecuador.

1

I'm a photographer – I take photos of animals for magazines and websites. I love my job!

2

I work in lots of different places all around the world – lakes, jungles, mountains, and sometimes cities. This week I'm in the city of Jaipur in India to take photos of city monkeys.

3

I don't really have a routine. Every day is different! Sometimes I get up very early, at around 5 a.m. and work in the day, but sometimes I work at night and sleep in the day. I always have a big breakfast before work – I love eggs and cheese.

4

It's really interesting. I see lots of beautiful places, and I always work outdoors.

5

The jungle! I love the different colours of the plants and flowers, and the sounds of the animals. I take hundreds of photos of the jungle!

6

I love big cats – lions and tigers. They're not very friendly but they're beautiful!

## GRAMMAR

### 1 Correct the mistakes with the possessive 's and contractions. Two sentences are correct.

- 1 Is Soo-jeong Andys wife?
- 2 Theyre Mario's children.
- 3 Joe's Rosa's brother.
- 4 Piotr and Layans house is near here.
- 5 Thats my sister's office.
- 6 Coco is Jiro's cat.
- 7 Its my sons birthday today.
- 8 My parent's are doctors.

### 2 Complete the conversations with one word in each gap.

- 1 A: Do you ..... a pencil?  
B: No, I ....., but I have a pen.
- 2 A: ..... they have children?  
B: Yes, they ..... They have a son.
- 3 A: Do you have ..... scissors?  
B: Yes, I do. I have ..... on my desk.
- 4 A: ..... your parents have a new car?  
B: No, they don't. They ..... a very old car.

### 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences and questions.

- 1 really / your / dress / like / I .
- 2 you / like / Do / video games ?
- 3 don't / We / fish / like .
- 4 supermarkets / I / much / like / don't / very .
- 5 love / my / really / I / new camera .
- 6 hate / My parents / really / big cities .
- 7 great / think / Berlin / I / a / is / place .
- 8 dislike / coffee / They / really .

### 4 Look at the table. Complete the sentences with the adverbs of frequency in the box.

always don't often never  
often sometimes usually

- 1 I ..... get up at 7 a.m.
- 2 I ..... have coffee with breakfast.
- 3 I ..... have a sandwich for lunch.
- 4 I ..... have steak for dinner.
- 5 I ..... watch TV in the evening.
- 6 I ..... go to bed late.

	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday	Saturday	Sunday
get up at 7 a.m.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		
have a coffee with breakfast	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
have a sandwich for lunch	✓	✓	✓		✓		
have steak for dinner							
watch TV in the evening						✓	✓
go to bed late						✓	

### 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 Monir ..... (not have) cereal for breakfast.
- 2 Aya usually ..... (leave) home at 9 a.m.
- 3 Zak never ..... (go) to bed early on Saturdays.
- 4 My brother ..... (not live) with me.
- 5 Vivien never ..... (drink) sparkling mineral water.
- 6 Josué ..... (not like) clothes shops very much.
- 7 Clara ..... (study) French on Saturdays.
- 8 Sheetal ..... (have) three cats.

### 6 The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

- 1 Does Reza finishes work at 6 p.m.?  
a Is Reza finishes      b Does Reza finish  
c Do Reza finish
- 2 Does Jin be a teacher?  
a Does Jin      b Are Jin      c Is Jin
- 3 Does you live with your parents?  
a Do you live      b Are you live      c Do you lives
- 4 A: Does Kiko like his job?  
B: Yes, he does like.  
a he likes      b he does      c he is

## VOCABULARY

### 7 Find six objects and six colours in the word snake.

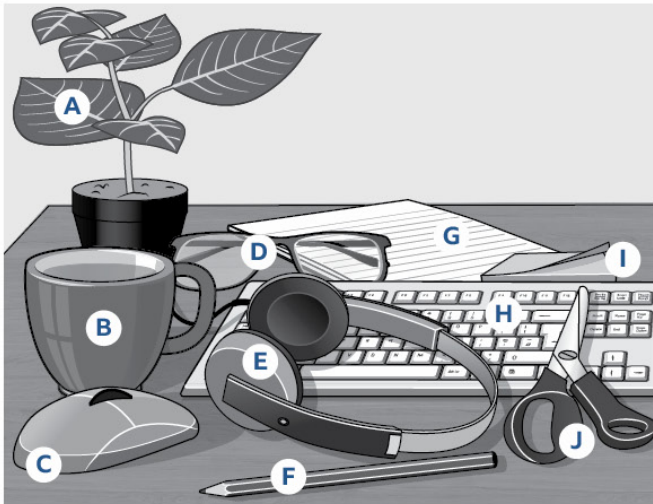
bedgerblue mkredkkkappurplejlguitarpspinkorecarbrownaswhitemuiocamerapiewring

- |         |          |
|---------|----------|
| 1 ..... | 7 .....  |
| 2 ..... | 8 .....  |
| 3 ..... | 9 .....  |
| 4 ..... | 10 ..... |
| 5 ..... | 11 ..... |
| 6 ..... | 12 ..... |



8 Match the words (1-10) with the objects in the picture (A-J).

- |              |                 |
|--------------|-----------------|
| 1 cup        | 6 notebook      |
| 2 glasses    | 7 pencil        |
| 3 headphones | 8 plant         |
| 4 keyboard   | 9 scissors      |
| 5 mouse      | 10 sticky notes |



9 Write the word for each item of clothing.



1 ..... 5 .....



2 ..... 6 .....



3 ..... 7 .....



4 ..... 8 .....

10 Choose the odd word out in each group.

- 1 carrot mushroom rice potato
- 2 steak cheese chicken meat
- 3 pasta apple orange banana
- 4 milk cheese tomato egg
- 5 fruit juice bread milk water

11 Choose the correct alternative.

I have cereal and a glass of <sup>1</sup>cheese / milk / orange for breakfast. Then for lunch, I have an <sup>2</sup>egg / bread / rice sandwich and some fruit – usually a <sup>3</sup>banana / fish / potato. For dinner, I have pasta or <sup>4</sup>banana / rice / water with vegetables – tomatoes, carrots or <sup>5</sup>cheese / steak / mushrooms. I don't like meat, so I don't eat <sup>6</sup>eggs / beef / fish or chicken.

12 Complete the phrases with the verbs in the box.

finish get up goes have  
leaves makes starts watch

- 1 I start work at 8 a.m. and ..... at 6 p.m.
- 2 Jon ..... home at 7 a.m. and goes to work.
- 3 The class ..... at 6.15 p.m. and finishes at 7.30 p.m.
- 4 Laura ..... dinner for me every day.
- 5 We ..... TV after dinner on Fridays.
- 6 I don't ..... early at the weekends.
- 7 Ayla and I ..... lunch in a café on Mondays.
- 8 Yang leaves work at 3 p.m. and ..... home.

13 Complete the conversation with the words in the box.

Americano bowl forks glass latte pastry  
sandwich sparkling spoon toast

- A: Hi. Can I help you?  
B: Yes, can I have two coffees: an <sup>1</sup>..... and a <sup>2</sup>....., please?  
A: Anything else?  
B: Yes, can I have a <sup>3</sup>..... of cereal, please, and a chocolate <sup>4</sup>.....?  
A: Of course. Anything else?  
B: Yes, can I also have <sup>5</sup>..... and eggs and a cheese <sup>6</sup>.....?  
A: Anything else?  
B: Yes, Can I have a <sup>7</sup>..... of mineral water?  
A: Still or <sup>8</sup>.....?  
B: Still, please.  
A: Of course. OK, here are your coffees.  
B: Thanks. Can I have a <sup>9</sup>....., please?  
A: They're over there with the knives and <sup>10</sup>.....  
B: Great, thank you.

# Lesson 5A

GRAMMAR | object pronouns

VOCABULARY | common verbs (1)

PRONUNCIATION | linking with object pronouns

## VOCABULARY

### common verbs (1)

1 A Find eight verbs in the word snake.

txegetasaydhcallpsendolhelpdjdtakeahdythankqforget

- |         |         |
|---------|---------|
| 1 ..... | 5 ..... |
| 2 ..... | 6 ..... |
| 3 ..... | 7 ..... |
| 4 ..... | 8 ..... |

B Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- My colleague Ben sometimes ..... coffee for me in the morning.  
a calls      b gets      c helps
- Pepe isn't friendly. He never ..... 'hello' or 'good morning'.  
a forgets      b sends      c says
- Akira never ..... my daughter's birthday.  
a forgets      b says      c takes
- Dilara often ..... me with problems at work.  
a takes      b sends      c helps
- Our colleague John sometimes ..... a two-hour lunch break.  
a calls      b takes      c sends
- I never ..... work emails in the evenings or at weekends.  
a send      b say      c take
- Simone usually ..... me for my help.  
a takes      b gets      c thanks
- Piotr often ..... his friends after work.  
a gets      b calls      c takes

C Complete the text with the words in the box.

for (x2)   gets   helps   says   thanks   to   with

My colleague Sanjit is great. He always <sup>1</sup> ..... 'hello' with a smile and he <sup>2</sup> ..... coffee <sup>3</sup> ..... everybody in the office. He always listens <sup>4</sup> ..... us. He often <sup>5</sup> ..... me <sup>6</sup> ..... my problems and always <sup>7</sup> ..... me <sup>8</sup> ..... my help.



## GRAMMAR

### object pronouns

2 A Complete the table.

subject pronoun	object pronoun
1 .....	me
you	2 .....
he	3 .....
4 .....	it
she	5 .....
6 .....	us
they	7 .....

B The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

- I don't like my manager. She never listens to I.  
a my      b me      c she
- I don't eat eggs because I don't like him.  
a them      b it      c her
- Our colleague James always helps we with our problems.  
a they      b them      c us
- My new coffee machine is great. I love her!  
a it      b him      c them

C Complete the text with object pronouns.

I'm a digital designer. My job is difficult, but I love <sup>1</sup> ..... My colleagues are friendly – I really like <sup>2</sup> ..... Mo is my favourite colleague. He always helps <sup>3</sup> ..... with my problems and I often have lunch with <sup>4</sup> ..... Our manager's name is Paola. She's a great manager and we like <sup>5</sup> ..... She never forgets our birthdays and on Fridays she always gets coffee and cakes for <sup>6</sup> .....!

## PRONUNCIATION

3 A 5.01 | linking with object pronouns | Listen to the sentences and add links between the words.

- I really like him.
- She never helps us.
- Please call her tomorrow.
- They don't like it.
- He always thanks us.
- She usually gets him coffee.

B 5.01 | Listen again and repeat the sentences.



## READING

### 4A Read the blog and choose the best title (a–c).

- a My Best Friend, Jay
- b A Good Colleague
- c A Good Friend but a Bad Colleague

I have a new job. It's in an office with twelve people and one of my colleagues is my friend, Jay!

Jay is an old friend from school. He's great! We usually play tennis together on Thursday evenings and we often have lunch or dinner together at the weekend with our families. We always have a good time. He never forgets my birthday, and sometimes he gets me a birthday cake! Jay is a very good listener and always helps me with my problems. He's a really good friend.

But at work, Jay is different! He always says 'hello' or 'good morning' but he sometimes forgets people's names! I have lunch in the café with my other colleagues, but Jay usually has lunch at his desk. He often gets me a coffee in the afternoon, but he doesn't talk very much and he doesn't always listen to my ideas. And he always uses my pens and sticky notes, but he never asks me!

I think Jay is a great friend, but I don't think he's a great colleague – it's very strange!

### B Read the blog again. Complete the table with the phrases in the box.

listens to me   doesn't listen to my ideas  
forgets important information   has lunch with me  
helps me with my problems   uses my things

my friend Jay	my colleague Jay



### C Read the blog again. Are the statements True (T) or False (F)?

- 1 The blog writer has ten colleagues.
- 2 Jay is the writer's new friend.
- 3 Jay and the writer play tennis together.
- 4 Jay always gets the writer a birthday cake.
- 5 The writer helps Jay with his problems.
- 6 Jay forgets his colleagues' names.
- 7 Jay usually has lunch with his colleagues.
- 8 Jay doesn't get the writer coffee.

## WRITING

### write about a colleague or friend; use pronouns

#### 5A Read the description. Choose the correct alternative.

- 1 Lizzie is a **good** / **bad** colleague.
- 2 Lizzie **says** / **doesn't say** 'thank you' for her coffee.
- 3 Lizzie **listens** / **doesn't listen** to other people's ideas.
- 4 Lizzie **sends** / **doesn't send** emails at the weekend.

Lizzie is my colleague. I think <sup>1</sup>Lizzie is a very good colleague. <sup>2</sup>Lizzie is really friendly and <sup>3</sup>Lizzie always says 'hello' to me. Every morning I get a coffee and a pastry for <sup>4</sup>Lizzie, and <sup>5</sup>Lizzie always thanks me. My other colleagues and I have lots of good ideas, and Lizzie always listens to <sup>6</sup>my colleagues and me. Lizzie never sends emails and messages at the weekend and <sup>7</sup>Lizzie never asks <sup>8</sup>my other colleagues and I to work on Saturdays. <sup>9</sup>My other colleagues and I like <sup>10</sup>Lizzie a lot!

#### B Replace the underlined words in the description with subject or object pronouns.

- 1 .....
- 2 .....
- 3 .....
- 4 .....
- 5 .....
- 6 .....
- 7 .....
- 8 .....
- 9 .....
- 10 .....

#### 6 Write a description of a colleague or friend. Use the text about Lizzie to help you. Remember to use pronouns. Write 50–80 words.

# Lesson 5B

GRAMMAR | *can* for ability

VOCABULARY | verbs of ability

PRONUNCIATION | *can*: weak and strong forms

## VOCABULARY

### verbs of ability

**1 A** Put the letters in the correct order to make verbs of ability.

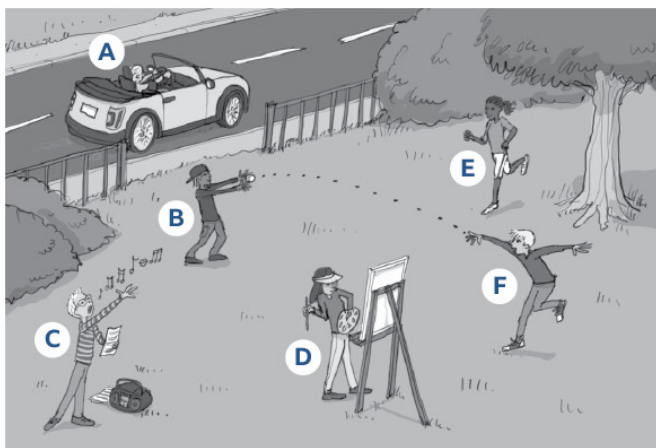
- |         |            |
|---------|------------|
| 1 seu   | 4 drea     |
| 2 ednac | 5 peles    |
| 3 ylap  | 6 reebmrem |

**B** Match the verbs (1–6) from Ex 1A with the objects (a–f).

- |                  |              |
|------------------|--------------|
| a chopsticks     | d in a bed   |
| b the tango      | e the guitar |
| c people's names | f a map      |

**C** Match the verbs in the box with activities (A–F). Two verbs are not used.

catch drive paint run  
sing swim throw type



**D** Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- My sister ..... the piano. She's really good.  
a dances      b plays      c sings
- Claire can speak some Japanese, but she can't ..... it.  
a catch      b read      c play
- I can't always ..... words in English.  
a paint      b dance      c remember
- Can you ..... a car?  
a dance      b type      c drive
- Huong often ..... on the bus after work.  
a catches      b sleeps      c uses
- I ..... five kilometres every day.  
a run      b use      c throw
- Kim ..... beautiful pictures of the sea.  
a sings      b swims      c paints
- I always ..... chopsticks when I eat Chinese food.  
a catch      b use      c type

**E** Read the job adverts. Choose the correct alternatives.

### Airport taxi driver

Work: Monday, Wednesday, Friday and Saturday

Pay: \$25 per hour

Skills: <sup>1</sup>drive / <sup>2</sup>ride a car

<sup>3</sup>play / <sup>4</sup>read a map

<sup>5</sup>type / <sup>6</sup>speak three languages

### WAITER

Work: Weekends

Pay: £12 per hour

Skills: <sup>1</sup>catch / <sup>2</sup>speak Japanese

<sup>3</sup>speak / <sup>4</sup>remember people's orders

<sup>5</sup>use / <sup>6</sup>play a coffee machine

### Office worker

Work: Monday to Friday

Pay: £20 per hour

Skills: <sup>1</sup>type / <sup>2</sup>use a computer

<sup>3</sup>type / <sup>4</sup>run quickly

<sup>5</sup>throw / <sup>6</sup>remember important information

## GRAMMAR

### *can* for ability

**2 A** Put the words in the correct order to make sentences or questions.

- a / can't / drive / Nisha / car .
- well / can / dance / Omar / very .
- you / speak / Japanese / Can ?
- coffee machine / father / My / his / use / can't .
- food / Can / Bibi / cook / Turkish ?
- Abdul / song / Spanish / can / a / in / sing .
- but / I'm / can't / sorry, / your / I / name / remember .
- remember / you / dates / Can / important ?



**B** The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

- Charlotte can speak Italian, but she can't not speak French.
  - can
  - can't
  - isn't
- A: Can Victor play the guitar?  
B: No, he can't play.
  - isn't
  - can't
  - cannot play
- Joachim can dances salsa very well, but he can't dance the tango.
  - can dance
  - can't dance
  - dance
- Does Sandeep can swim 10 kilometres?
  - Sandeep cannot
  - Can Sandeep
  - Sandeep can

**C** Complete the conversations with *can / can't* and a verb in the box. Some verbs are used more than once.

drive paint play read sing speak

- A: ..... you ..... two languages?  
B: Yes, I ..... I ..... Turkish and German.
- A: ..... Rosa ..... a car?  
B: No, she ..... She always walks to work.
- A: ..... Hai Yun ..... people?  
B: Yes, she ..... She ..... people very well.
- A: Can Ali ..... the piano?  
B: No, he ..... but he ..... very well.
- A: ..... you ..... the map?  
B: No, I ..... I don't have my glasses.
- A: ..... you ..... tennis?  
B: Yes, I ....., but not very well!

## PRONUNCIATION

**3A** **5.02 | can: weak and strong forms** | Listen and choose the sound you hear.

- |           |         |           |
|-----------|---------|-----------|
| 1 a /kæn/ | b /kən/ | c /ka:nt/ |
| 2 a /kæn/ | b /kən/ | c /ka:nt/ |
| 3 a /kæn/ | b /kən/ | c /ka:nt/ |
| 4 a /kæn/ | b /kən/ | c /ka:nt/ |
| 5 a /kæn/ | b /kən/ | c /ka:nt/ |
| 6 a /kæn/ | b /kən/ | c /ka:nt/ |

**B** **5.02** | Listen again and repeat.

## LISTENING

**4A** **5.03** | Listen to the conversation. Tick (✓) the things in the photos (A–E) Martin can do.



**B** **5.03** | Listen again and complete the table.

	Martin can	Martin can, but not very well	Martin can't
play the guitar			
play the piano			
sing a song in English			
read a map			
use a computer			
type with his eyes closed			
swim			
play football			

**C** Complete the sentences with words from the conversation in Ex 4A.

- Martin can dance the .....
- He can't dance .....
- He can't ..... pictures.
- He can't remember .....
- He can say 'hello' in ..... languages.
- He can ..... five kilometres.

**D** **5.03** | Listen again and check your answers.

# Lesson 5C

HOW TO ... | make requests and offers  
VOCABULARY | common adjectives (2)  
PRONUNCIATION | weak forms: *could you*

## VOCABULARY

### common adjectives (2)

1 A Write a word to fill the gaps.

adjective	opposite
expensive	1 .....
2 .....	wrong
open	3 .....
4 .....	late

B Complete the sentences with an adjective from Ex 1A.

- We can't have lunch in the café today – it's ..... on Sundays.
- A: The Taj Mahal is in Vietnam.  
B: You're .....! The Taj Mahal isn't in Vietnam, it's in India.
- The coffee at the Green Tree café is ..... – only £1 for a big cup.
- A: Is the shop .....?  
B: No, it isn't. It's closed today.
- Priya is always ..... for work. She gets to the office at 9.30, but we start at nine o'clock.
- A: Is this the ..... answer?  
B: Yes, it is. Very good.

C Match the sentence beginnings (1–6) with the endings (a–f).

- The Grand hotel is good, but it's
  - Toby was wrong!
  - Eliza is never late for work, she's
  - The café isn't
  - It isn't *type* a computer. The right
  - Is the shop closed?
- a always early.  
b answer is *use*.  
c open. It's 10 p.m.  
d expensive – a room is £450 per night.  
e Yes, it isn't open on Mondays.  
f the answer is 98.

## How to ...

### make requests and offers

2 A 5.04 | Listen to the conversation and answer the questions.

- Where is Emily?  
a in a shop    b in an office    c in a café
- Where is Dave?  
a in a café    b in an office    c in a shop

B 5.04 | Listen again. Are the statements True (T) or False (F)?

- Emily says the café is busy.
- Dave can take a lunch break.
- Dave asks Emily for an Americano.
- The café doesn't have any pasta.
- Dave asks for a cheese sandwich.
- Dave wants brown bread.

C 5.05 | Listen to the recording and write the four sentences that you hear. You will hear each sentence only once.

## PRONUNCIATION

3 A 5.06 | weak forms: *could you* | Listen to the sentences and underline the main stressed words.

- Could you help me?
- Could you make me a coffee?
- Could you send me an email?
- Could you drive me home?
- Could you type the report?
- Could you get some milk?

B 5.06 | Listen again and repeat the questions. Notice the pronunciation of *could you* /kədʒə/.

## SPEAKING

4 A Complete the conversation with the words in the box.

can    can't    course    help  
problem    right    so    you

- A: Hi Jo, are you OK?  
B: No. Could you <sup>1</sup> ..... me?  
A: Of <sup>2</sup> ..... What's the problem?  
B: I <sup>3</sup> ..... open this report.  
A: <sup>4</sup> ..... I look? Oh, OK. Do you have the password?  
B: No, I don't. Sorry. Could <sup>5</sup> ..... open it for me?  
A: All <sup>6</sup> ..... Give me two minutes.  
B: Thank you <sup>7</sup> ..... much!  
A: No <sup>8</sup> .....!

B 5.07 | Listen to the conversation and check your answers.

C 5.08 | You are B in the conversation in Ex 4A. Listen and speak after the beep. Record the conversation if you can.

D Listen to your recording and compare it with the model in Ex 4A.



# Lesson 5D

GRAMMAR | ordinal numbers; dates  
LISTENING | birthday plans

## GRAMMAR

### ordinal numbers; dates

#### 1 A Write the ordinal number.

- |                  |            |
|------------------|------------|
| a 1 <u>first</u> | e 11 _____ |
| b 2 _____        | f 15 _____ |
| c 3 _____        | g 20 _____ |
| d 7 _____        | h 31 _____ |

#### B Choose the correct alternative.

- It's Karim's birthday today. He's **twelfth** / **twelve**.
- My birthday is on the **three** / **third** of April.
- A: What's the date today?  
B: It's the **twenty-seven** / **twenty-seventh** of July.
- We live on the **four** / **fourth** floor.
- Kasia and Andy have **three** / **third** children.
- This is my **one** / **first** time in Hong Kong.
- Mia has **two** / **second** jobs.
- I start my new job on the **twenty** / **twentieth** of December.

#### C Match the dates (1–8) with the phrases (a–h).

- |                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| 1 2nd October 1896     | a March the twenty-fifth, twenty twenty-one. |
| 2 July 31st, 2015      | b the eighteenth of May, nineteen eighty     |
| 3 January 28th, 2020   | c the first of April, nineteen ninety-seven  |
| 4 26th June 2014       | d July the thirty-first, twenty fifteen      |
| 5 September 14th, 2012 | e September the fourteenth, twenty twelve    |
| 6 March 25th, 2021     | f the second of October, eighteen ninety-six |
| 7 18th May 1980        | g the twenty-sixth of June, twenty fourteen  |
| 8 1st April 1997       | h January the twenty-eighth, twenty-twenty   |

## LISTENING

#### 2 A 5.09 | Listen to the conversation between Sam and Theo. Choose their birthdays.

<b>A</b> January <b>9th</b>	<b>C</b> January <b>19th</b>	<b>E</b> June <b>17th</b>
<b>B</b> June <b>9th</b>	<b>D</b> June <b>7th</b>	<b>F</b> July <b>17th</b>

#### B 5.09 | Listen again. Which photo shows:

- Sam's birthday plans?
- Theo's birthday plans?



#### C 5.09 | Listen again. Choose the correct alternative.

- Sam **does something** / **doesn't usually do anything** special on his birthday.
- Sam's friends usually **forget** / **remember** that it's his birthday.
- Sam really likes **parties** / **picnics**.
- Theo **doesn't really like** / **loves** his birthday.
- Theo usually has lunch **in a restaurant** / **at his parents' house** on his birthday.
- Theo's **mother** / **father** makes him a birthday cake.
- Theo **always** / **sometimes** has a party in his apartment.

#### D 5.10 | Listen to the recording and write the four sentences that you hear. You will hear each sentence only once.

- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_



# Lesson 6A

GRAMMAR | prepositions of place  
VOCABULARY | rooms and furniture  
PRONUNCIATION | sentence stress

## VOCABULARY

### rooms and furniture

1 A Complete the table with the words in the box.

armchair bath bathroom bed bedroom chair  
cooker door floor kitchen living room plant  
sofa table television toilet wall window

rooms / parts of a house	furniture / objects

B Select a word or phrase to fill the gaps.

- I usually sit on the ..... and watch television.  
a fridge      b shelf      c sofa
- Is the milk in the .....?  
a fridge      b toilet      c cooker
- The ..... has a toilet and shower.  
a kitchen      b living room      c bathroom
- Is my book on the .....?  
a shelf      b window      c lamp
- The garden has lots of beautiful .....  
a floors      b plants      c cookers
- My bedroom is very light – it has two big .....  
a walls      b beds      c windows
- Do you have a ..... or a bath in your bathroom?  
a shower      b cooker      c sofa
- It's dark – could you turn on the ..... please?  
a television      b lamp      c shelf

C Complete the text with the words in the box. There are two extra words.

armchair bed fridge garden  
kitchen lamp toilet wall

### Great one-bedroom apartment in the city centre

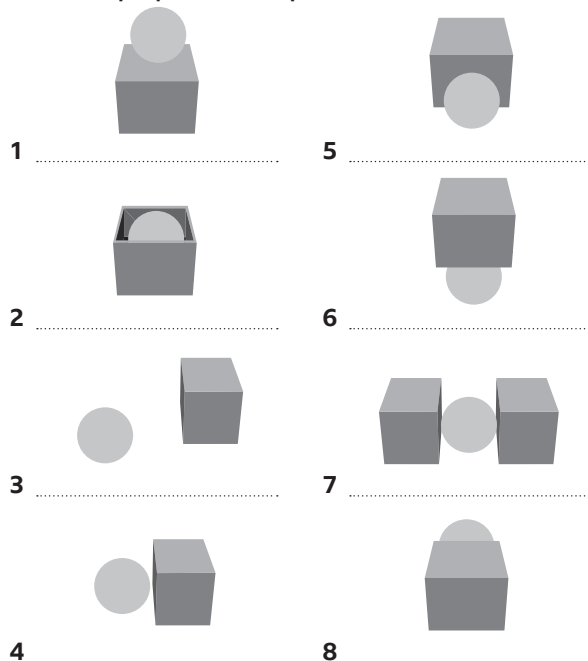


Small, beautiful apartment in the city centre. It has a lovely living room with a big sofa, an <sup>1</sup> ..... and a television. The <sup>2</sup> ..... has a cooker and a <sup>3</sup> ..... The bedroom has a big <sup>4</sup> ....., a chair and a table with a beautiful <sup>5</sup> ..... on it. It doesn't have a <sup>6</sup> ....., but it is near a great park.

## GRAMMAR

### prepositions of place

2 A Write the prepositions of place.



B Choose the correct alternative.

- Chang lives **on** / **under** / **in** Canada.
- Are my keys **in** / **on** / **between** the shelf?
- My sister lives **near** / **under** / **in** my house.
- Our apartment is **in** / **on** / **behind** the 4th floor.
- The cat is **behind** / **between** / **in** the sofa.
- Carlos sits **next to** / **under** / **between** me in class.
- Mika is **in** / **between** / **on** Ana and Paola.
- In the photo, Saima is **in front of** / **in** / **between** Terry.

C 6.02 | Complete the conversation with the prepositions in the box. Then listen and check.

in (x3) in front near next on (x2) under

- A: Where do you live?  
B: I live <sup>1</sup> ..... Geneva, <sup>2</sup> ..... to the lake.  
A: Do you live <sup>3</sup> ..... an apartment or a house?  
B: An apartment. It's <sup>4</sup> ..... the 12th floor.  
A: Is it <sup>5</sup> ..... your office?  
B: Yes, it's only ten minutes by bike. I live with two of my colleagues. Look, you can see them <sup>6</sup> ..... this photo. That's Eun and that's Ed.  
A: Is that your cat <sup>7</sup> ..... the floor <sup>8</sup> ..... of Ed?  
B: Yes, that's Mochi. He usually sleeps <sup>9</sup> ..... my bed and we can't see him!

D 6.01 | Listen and check your answers.

## PRONUNCIATION

**3A** **6.03 | sentence stress** | Listen and underline the main stressed words.

- 1 It's under the window.
- 2 It's on the shelf.
- 3 It's next to the bath.
- 4 It's in front of you.
- 5 Is it between the chairs?
- 6 Is it near your house?
- 7 Is it behind the bed?
- 8 Is it in the fridge?

**B** **6.03** | Listen again and check your answers.

## READING

**4A** Match the words (1–4) with the photos (A–D).

- |              |             |
|--------------|-------------|
| 1 riverboat  | 3 castle    |
| 2 lighthouse | 4 treehouse |



**B** Read the article. Which places from Ex 4A are mentioned?

### Interesting homes

My house is interesting – it's an old lighthouse in Scotland, next to the sea. The kitchen is on the ground floor. It has a cooker, a fridge and a big table. The living room is on the first floor. It has a sofa, an armchair and a television. The bathroom is next to the living room. It's small, but it has a big bath under the window. My bedroom is on the top floor. It's my favourite room because you can see the sea from every window. I have a big garden with lots of plants.

**Chris**

I don't live in a house – I live on a boat in India. It's a river boat – it's small but it has everything! I have three rooms – a living room, a bedroom and a bathroom. The living room has a sofa, a small table, a fridge and a cooker. It doesn't have a television. My bedroom is next to the living room. It has my bed with a lamp and a radio on a shelf. The bathroom is very small. It has a toilet and a shower, but it doesn't have a bath. I don't have a garden, but I have plants in the living room.

**Anushri**

**C** Read the article again. Are the statements True (T) or False (F)?

- 1 Chris lives in Scotland.
- 2 He lives near a river.
- 3 His favourite room is his bathroom.
- 4 Anushri lives in Thailand.
- 5 She has three rooms.
- 6 She doesn't have a bathroom.

**D** Read the article again. Write L (lighthouse) or R (riverboat).

- 1 It has a big table in the kitchen.
- 2 It has a fridge in the living room.
- 3 It has a sofa and an armchair in the living room.
- 4 It doesn't have a television.
- 5 It has a big bath in the bathroom.
- 6 It has a lamp in the bedroom.
- 7 It doesn't have a garden.
- 8 It has plants in the living room.

**E** Cover the article. Complete the sentences with the correct preposition, then check your answers in the article.

- 1 Chris lives ..... the sea.
- 2 His living room is ..... the 1st floor.
- 3 The bath is ..... the window.
- 4 Anushri lives ..... India.
- 5 Her bedroom is ..... the living room.
- 6 She has a radio ..... a shelf in her bedroom.

# Lesson 6B

GRAMMAR | *there is, there are*

VOCABULARY | places in town (1)

PRONUNCIATION | linking with *there*

## VOCABULARY

### places in town (1)

1 A Write the place in each photo.



1 .....



4 .....



2 .....



5 .....



3 .....



6 .....

B Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- We don't have any bread. Could you get some at the ..... please?  
a cinema    b supermarket    c museum
- I want to send a letter. Where's the .....?  
a sports centre    b train station    c post office
- Can you take my books to the ..... please?  
a library    b cinema    c hospital
- Excuse me, where's the bus .....?  
a centre    b station    c pool
- I often watch films at the ..... on Saturday evenings.  
a post office    b airport    c cinema
- My parents usually stay in an expensive ..... on holiday.  
a hotel    b museum    c library
- Farah plays tennis at the ..... on Thursdays.  
a post office    b sports centre    c library
- Ray is a doctor at a big ..... in my town.  
a hospital    b museum    c supermarket

## GRAMMAR

### *there is, there are*

2 A Choose the correct alternative.

- There **is** / **are** two train stations in this city.
- There **isn't** / **aren't** a swimming pool at the hotel.
- Are there **some** / **any** museums in your town?
- There **is** / **are** a cinema near my house.
- A: Is there a hospital near your house?  
B: No, there **isn't** / **aren't**.
- Is** / **Are** there a post office?
- There **isn't** / **aren't** any hotels here.
- Are there **a** / **any** good schools here?

B Complete the conversation with the correct form of *there is / are (not)*. Use contractions where possible.

- A: Do you like your new apartment?  
B: Yes, it's great! <sup>1</sup> ..... a big kitchen, a living room and there <sup>2</sup> ..... two bedrooms.  
A: Is <sup>3</sup> ..... a garden?  
B: No, there <sup>4</sup> ..... but it's next to a park.  
A: Do you live in the town centre?  
B: Yes, it's great! <sup>5</sup> ..... a cinema, a museum and a library near me. There <sup>6</sup> ..... any sports centres, but <sup>7</sup> ..... a swimming pool.  
A: <sup>8</sup> ..... there a train station?  
B: No, there <sup>9</sup> ..... but <sup>10</sup> ..... a bus station.

C 6.04 | Listen and check your answers.

D The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

- Is an airport five kilometres from my house.  
a There    b There's    c Are
- Are there a post office?  
a There are    b There is    c Is there
- A: Is there a swimming pool near the school?  
B: Yes, there are.  
a there's    b is there    c there is
- There aren't a libraries in the town centre.  
a any    b some    c no

## PRONUNCIATION

3 A 6.05 | **linking with there** | Listen to the sentences and add links between the words when you hear them.

- There's a very good café.
- Are there any supermarkets near here?
- There isn't a park in the area.
- There are two museums.
- Is there a Thai restaurant?
- No, there isn't.

B 6.05 | Listen again and repeat the sentences.



## LISTENING

**4A** **6.06** | Listen to three people talking about their towns. What do the speakers have in their towns? Match the speakers (1–3) with the photos (A–C).

- 1 Genevieve      2 Tomas      3 Liane



**B** **6.06** | Listen again. Choose the correct alternative.

**Genevieve**

- 1 There is a **shopping centre / supermarket**.  
2 There isn't a **swimming pool / sports centre**.

**Tomas**

- 3 There are two **hotels / restaurants**.  
4 There is a **library / cinema**.

**Liane**

- 5 There are two **sports centres / hospitals**.  
6 There isn't a **train station / an airport**.

**C** **6.06** | Listen again. Are the statements True (T) or False (F)?

- 1 There aren't any schools in Genevieve's town.  
2 Genevieve's favourite place is the park.  
3 Shops are important for Tomas.  
4 The Italian restaurant in Tomas's town is expensive.  
5 Liane's favourite restaurant is Turkish.  
6 There isn't a bus station in Liane's town.

## WRITING

**a post about your area**

**5A** Read the travel guide. Match the headings (1–4) with the correct section (A–D).

- 1 Places to stay      3 Things to do  
2 Places to eat      4 Places to shop



**Whitstable** is a small town next to the sea in the south of England. It's about an hour by train from London and a great place to visit for the weekend!

- A** ..... You can swim in the sea, walk on the beach and ride a bike to the old city of Canterbury about 30 minutes away.
- B** ..... There are great places to eat in Whitstable. There are lovely cafés in the town centre and lots of fish restaurants near the sea. There are also very good Italian, Spanish and Thai restaurants.
- C** ..... There are lots of small bookshops, clothes shops and gift shops. On Saturdays, there is a farmers' market in the town centre.
- D** ..... There are lots of hotels and holiday apartments in Whitstable. Some of them are cheap and some of them are expensive.

**B** Choose the correct sentence (a–b). Pay attention to the commas.

- 1 **a** There are French British and Turkish cafés.  
**b** There are French, British and Turkish cafés.
- 2 **a** There is a bus station, a train station, and an airport.  
**b** There is a bus station, a train station and an airport.
- 3 **a** London is a great place to visit because it has everything.  
**b** London is a great place to visit, because it has everything.

**C** Add commas to the sentences if necessary.

- 1 Rome is great because there are lots of museums parks and shops.
- 2 I like my town because there is lots to do.
- 3 There isn't a cinema a sports centre or a swimming pool in my town.
- 4 There is a supermarket and a shopping centre.

**6A** Write a travel guide about your town or city. First make notes about:

- things to do
- places to shop
- places to eat
- places to stay

**B** Write your travel guide. Use commas where necessary. Write 80–100 words.

# Lesson 6C

HOW TO ... | ask where a place is

VOCABULARY | places in town (2); signs in buildings

PRONUNCIATION | weak forms with *to*, *of* and *the*

## VOCABULARY

### places in town (2)

#### 1 Complete the text with the words in the box.

buildings bus stop car park  
cash machine clock street

This is a photo of my town. This is the main <sup>1</sup> .....  
You can see the shops and cafés. There are lots of  
beautiful <sup>2</sup> ..... and a very old <sup>3</sup> ..... There's  
a bank with a <sup>4</sup> ..... at one end of the street and  
a <sup>5</sup> ..... at the other. There isn't a bus station but  
there's a <sup>6</sup> ..... next to the car park.

### signs in buildings

#### 2 Select a word or phrase to fill the gaps.

- 1 A: Where's Room 201?  
B: I don't know. Ask at the .....  
a lift b information desk c car park
- 2 I don't have any money. Is there a ..... near here?  
a clock b cash machine c lift
- 3 A: What's the time?  
B: Just a moment, there's a ..... on my phone.  
a bus stop b lift c clock
- 4 You can't go through that door – it's the exit, not the .....  
a entrance b fire exit c stair
- 5 There isn't a lift, so we have to use the .....  
a information desk b stairs c clock
- 6 A: Excuse me, is there a hospital near here?  
B: Yes, it's ten minutes by bus. There's a ..... over there.  
a building b school c bus stop

## How to ...

### ask where a place is

#### 3A 6.07 | Listen to the conversation. Tick the places you hear.

- bus station
- bus stop
- cash machine
- cinema
- information desk
- library
- lift
- post office
- restaurant
- train station

#### B 6.07 | Listen again and choose the correct alternative.

- 1 Jago is at the **train station** / **cinema**.  
2 Jago / Lily is 30 minutes late.  
3 The cinema is **10** / **15** minutes from the train station.  
4 The bus stop is **next to** / **opposite** the train station entrance.  
5 The bus stop is next to the **post office** / **library**.  
6 The cinema is on the **first** / **second** floor of the shopping centre.  
7 The cinema is **next to** / **opposite** the restaurant.  
8 Lily is near the **information desk** / **lift**.

## PRONUNCIATION

#### 4A 6.08 | weak forms with *to*, *of* and *the* | Listen and underline the stressed words.

- 1 It's near the supermarket.  
2 It's next to the sports centre.  
3 It's to the right of the hospital.  
4 I'm in front of the train station.  
5 It's on the left of the library.  
6 It's opposite the post office.

#### B 6.08 | Listen again and repeat the sentences. Pay attention to the weak forms of *the*, *of* and *to*.

## SPEAKING

#### 5A 6.09 | Complete the conversation with the words in the box. Then listen and check.

excuse far how know  
near next opposite there

- A: <sup>1</sup> ..... me?  
B: Yes?  
A: Is there a library <sup>2</sup> ..... here?  
B: Yes, <sup>3</sup> ..... is.  
A: How <sup>4</sup> ..... is it?  
B: About ten minutes from here.  
A: <sup>5</sup> ..... do I get there?  
B: Do you <sup>6</sup> ..... the museum?  
A: Yes, I do.  
B: It's <sup>7</sup> ..... the museum, <sup>8</sup> ..... to the post office.  
A: Great, thank you.

#### B 6.10 | You are A in the conversation in Ex 5A. Listen and speak after the beep. Record the conversation if you can.

#### C Listen to your recording and compare it with the model in Ex 5A.

# Lesson 6D

GRAMMAR | *the*  
READING | 24 hours in ... Cairo

## GRAMMAR

*the*

### 1 A Choose the correct alternative.

- 1 Josué is from **a** / **the** big city in Brazil.
- 2 **A** / **The** Louvre is a museum in Paris.
- 3 Do you have **a** / **the** sister?
- 4 I usually have **a** / **the** sandwich for lunch.
- 5 My birthday is on **a** / **the** 21st of September.
- 6 Adem is **an** / **the** actor.
- 7 What's **a** / **the** date today?
- 8 My favourite room in my house is **a** / **the** kitchen.

### B The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

- 1 Kavita has two daughters and the son.  
**a** an                      **b** a                      **c** any
- 2 London is the capital of United Kingdom.  
**a** an United Kingdom      **b** the United Kingdom  
**c** a United Kingdom
- 3 I have some cat called Biggles.  
**a** the                      **b** an                      **c** a
- 4 Do you know an answer to question five?  
**a** the                      **b** a                      **c** some

### C Complete the blog with *a, an* or *the*.

#### Where I live: Madrid

Madrid is <sup>1</sup> ..... capital of Spain. It is <sup>2</sup> ..... big city with lots of things to do. There are lots of museums – <sup>3</sup> ..... Prado Museum is very big and really interesting. There are beautiful streets and old buildings. <sup>4</sup> ..... Plaza Mayor is <sup>5</sup> ..... old square in the centre of Madrid – it's about 500 years old. There is also <sup>6</sup> ..... beautiful park with <sup>7</sup> ..... small lake called <sup>8</sup> ..... Retiro. You can go on <sup>9</sup> ..... boat on <sup>10</sup> ..... lake.

## READING

### 2 A Read the travel guide. Match the photos (A–E) with the paragraphs (1–4). There is one extra photo.

### B Read the guide again. Are the statements True (T) or False (F)?

- 1 There are two big Pyramids at Giza.
- 2 The Sphinx has a lion's head.
- 3 You can see a famous mask at the Museum.
- 4 You can see the Pyramids from Al Azhar Park.
- 5 Khan Al Khalili is a very big supermarket.

### 24 hours in ... Cairo

**Cairo is the capital of Egypt. It is a beautiful city and there are lots of things to see and do. Here are some ideas of where to go if you only have one day in this lovely place.**

- 1 Get up early and take a taxi to the Pyramids at Giza. There are three big Pyramids (the Great Pyramids) and lots of small ones. They are over 4,500 years old. You can also see the Sphinx, a famous monument of a lion with a man's head. You don't have time to go in the Pyramids, but you can take great photos.
- 2 Your next stop is the Egyptian Museum. It's very big – there are over a hundred rooms! There are lots of really interesting things here. You can see old paintings, clothes, money and, of course, the famous mask of King Tutankhamun.
- 3 In the afternoon, take the bus to Al Azhar Park. Here you can walk through the gardens or sit by the lake and relax. From the park, you can see old parts of the city and the Citadel, a very important building in Cairo.
- 4 Your last stop is Khan Al Khalili market, a very big street market. There are hundreds of small shops here. You can buy lots of different things, but our favourites are lamps and rugs. Stop for a cup of coffee and a cake at one of the cafés if you're hungry.





## GRAMMAR

## 1 Match the subject pronouns (1-7) with the object pronouns (a-g).

- |        |        |
|--------|--------|
| 1 I    | a us   |
| 2 you  | b it   |
| 3 he   | c him  |
| 4 she  | d me   |
| 5 it   | e them |
| 6 we   | f her  |
| 7 they | g you  |

## 2 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- Can I call ..... tomorrow?  
a me                      b you                      c your
- ..... love my job!  
a She                      b Me                      c I
- My parents have lunch with ..... once a month.  
a us                      b we                      c I
- My brother's name is Paco. Do you know .....?  
a he                      b her                      c him
- I never drink coffee. I don't like .....  
a it                      b him                      c her
- My grandparents live in China. I visit ..... every summer.  
a they                      b them                      c him

3 Write sentences about Leonora and Hiro. Use the information in the table and *can* or *can't*.

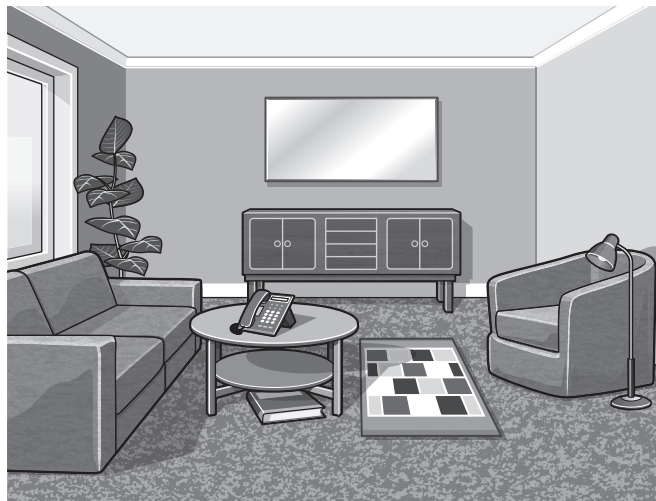
	Leonora	Hiro
swim five kilometres	✓	✗
play the guitar	✗	✓
drive a car	✓	✗
use chopsticks	✓	✓
play tennis	✗	✓
speak two languages	✓	✓

- Leonora can swim five kilometres. Hiro can't swim five kilometres.
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....

## 4 Complete the sentences with the number word or ordinal word of the number in brackets.

- Jae has two cats. (2)
- Faye's birthday is on the ..... of January. (11)
- We live on the ..... floor. (10)
- It's the ..... of December today. (1)
- There are ..... train stations in my town. (4)
- This is my ..... time in Mexico. (2)
- My birthday is on the ..... of May. (3)
- Emre has ..... jobs. (3)

## 5 Choose the correct option (a-c) to complete the sentences.



- The window is ..... the sofa.  
a between                      b behind                      c under
- The table is ..... of the sofa.  
a in front                      b behind                      c on
- The rug is ..... the table and the armchair.  
a opposite                      b between                      c under
- There's a book ..... the table.  
a in                      b on                      c under
- A phone is ..... the table.  
a next to                      b near                      c on
- There's a plant ..... the window.  
a behind                      b in                      c next to
- The armchair is ..... the sofa.  
a opposite                      b next to                      c between
- There's a lamp ..... the armchair.  
a near                      b on                      c in

6 Complete the description with the correct form of *there is / are (not)*. Use contractions where possible.

Lovely apartment, perfect for a weekend break.

1 ..... two big bedrooms and a small bedroom. In the bathroom 2 ..... a shower but 3 ..... a bath.  
4 ..... a great kitchen with a fridge and a new cooker.  
5 ..... also a big table with eight chairs. In the living room, 6 ..... a sofa, but 7 ..... any armchairs.  
There's a big balcony, but 8 ..... a garden.

£150 per night

7 Complete the sentences with *a*, *an* or *the*.

- ..... Great Wall of China is over 2,000 years old.
- David Hockney is ..... famous British artist.
- It's two o'clock in ..... afternoon.
- My wife is from ..... USA.
- The museum is to ..... left of the library.
- I'm from ..... small city in Colombia.
- Wei's brother is ..... actor.
- Your jacket is on ..... sofa.

# VOCABULARY

## 8A Choose the correct alternative.

- I usually **get** / **take** / **call** coffee for my colleagues on Monday morning.
- My manager is great. She always **thanks** / **says** / **helps** us for our work.
- Chao often **sends** / **takes** / **helps** a two-hour lunch break.
- I never **say** / **forget** / **call** my friends' birthdays.
- My sister usually **helps** / **calls** / **thanks** me with my problems.
- I **call** / **say** / **send** my grandfather every Sunday afternoon.
- My neighbour is very friendly. He always **sends** / **says** / **thanks** 'hello' to me.
- My friend Diya **calls** / **says** / **sends** me an email every week.

## B Complete the phrases with the verbs in the box. There are two extra verbs.

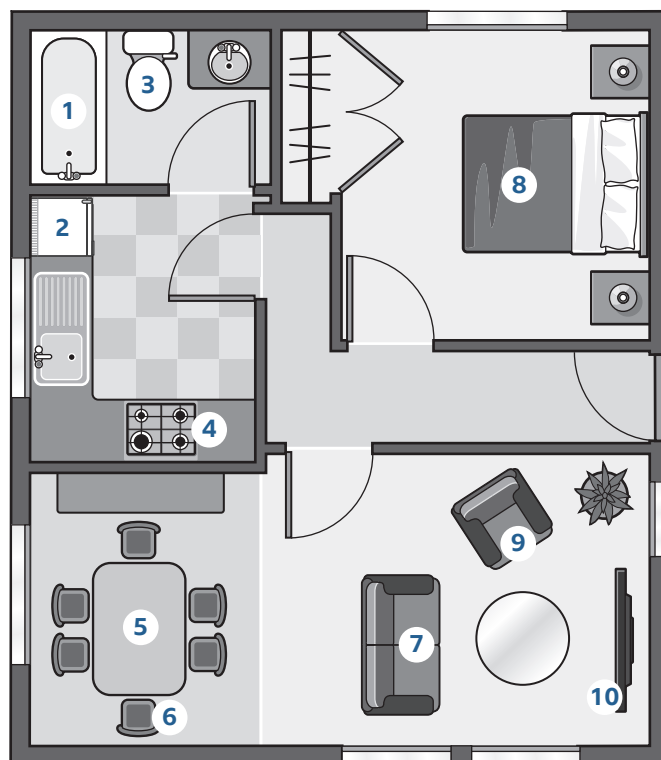
dance drive play read remember paint  
run sleep swim throw type use

- ..... a picture  
..... people
- ..... tennis  
..... football
- ..... five kilometres  
..... in the sea
- ..... a computer  
..... chopsticks
- ..... salsa  
..... the tango
- ..... with your eyes closed  
..... fast
- ..... in the park  
..... ten kilometres
- ..... a book  
..... a map
- ..... people's names  
..... your friend's birthday
- ..... in a bed  
..... on a bus

## 9 Complete the sentences with the opposite of the adjective in brackets.

- I get up very ....., because I start work at six o'clock in the morning. (late)
- The Grand Hotel is very ....., It's £500 per night for a room! (cheap)
- The supermarket isn't ..... now – it's eleven o'clock at night. (closed)
- I'm sorry, but you're ..... The answer is 32. (right)

## 10 Write the furniture or parts of the house (1-10).



- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....

## 11 A Find eight places in a town in the word snake.

apollibraryhjschoolymuseumumbdchbanklaosupemarkercinemakhospitaldbairport

## B Complete the words in the conversation.

- A: Hello, are you new here?  
B: Yes, this is my first day. I'm Daniel.  
A: Welcome to Jones Design, Daniel! I'm Orla. So, this is the building. First, our office is on the third <sup>1</sup>f..... There's a <sup>2</sup>l..... over there, next to the <sup>3</sup>i..... desk, or the <sup>4</sup>s..... are over there, on the left. There's a fire <sup>5</sup>e..... on every floor – look for the green signs. The café is on the second floor and there's a <sup>6</sup>c..... machine next to it.  
B: Great, thank you. Is there a car <sup>7</sup>p..... area?  
A: Yes. It's behind the office on 12th Street. There's also a bus <sup>8</sup>s..... opposite the entrance.

# Lesson 7A

GRAMMAR | present simple: *wh*- questions

VOCABULARY | everyday activities (2)

PRONUNCIATION | sentence stress

## VOCABULARY

### everyday activities (2)

#### 1 A Match the verbs in the box with the phrases (1–8).

clean cook do feed have spend visit wash

- 1 ..... a shower / a cold drink
- 2 ..... some vegetables / a meal
- 3 ..... the morning with friends / five minutes alone
- 4 ..... a room / my kitchen
- 5 ..... my hands / my car
- 6 ..... some friends / my grandmother
- 7 ..... nothing / my homework
- 8 ..... the baby / the ducks

#### B Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- 1 Dani always ..... my favourite food on my birthday.  
a cleans      b cooks      c feeds
- 2 I ..... my apartment on Fridays after work.  
a wash      b do      c clean
- 3 My parents ..... the shopping on Saturday mornings.  
a have      b do      c visit
- 4 I usually ..... an hour or two online in the evening.  
a spend      b do      c visit
- 5 It's cold! Let's ..... a hot drink.  
a cook      b do      c have
- 6 We often ..... museums at the weekend.  
a spend      b visit      c have
- 7 Can you ..... the cat, please? She wants her breakfast!  
a feed      b do      c cook
- 8 I ..... my hair every day.  
a wash      b feed      c spend

#### C Complete the text with the words in the box.

alone apartment bath ducks  
friends meal museum nothing

I'm very busy from Monday to Friday with my job, so at the weekends I relax. On Saturdays, I get up late. I have breakfast and spend an hour or two <sup>1</sup> ..... Then I usually cook a nice <sup>2</sup> ..... with my wife. Sometimes, we have a picnic in the park and feed the <sup>3</sup> ..... In the afternoon, we spend time with <sup>4</sup> ..... or sometimes visit a <sup>5</sup> ..... In the evening, I often have a long <sup>6</sup> ..... and read a book. On Sundays I do <sup>7</sup> .....! I never clean my <sup>8</sup> ..... or do work at the weekends!

## GRAMMAR

### present simple: *wh*- questions

#### 2 A Complete the questions with the words in the box.

how (x2) what (x2) when where who why

- 1 ..... do your grandparents live?
- 2 ..... do you say 'mother' in Turkish?
- 3 ..... time does our English class start?
- 4 ..... do you like tennis?
- 5 ..... do you start work?
- 6 ..... food do you like?
- 7 ..... do you sit next to at work?
- 8 ..... do you remember words in English?

#### B Put the words in the correct order to make questions.

- 1 Sol / know / you / How / do ?
- 2 live / Tinh / with / does / Who ?
- 3 do / you / Why / to / work / cycle ?
- 4 do / at / the weekend / you / What / do ?
- 5 visit / When / Sadie / does / her / grandmother ?
- 6 finish / time / Geoff / What / does / work ?
- 7 usually / Where / on holiday / go / do / they ?
- 8 eat / Benny / does / breakfast / What / for ?

#### C Match the answers (a–h) with the questions (1–8) in Ex 2B.

- a He always has cereal.
- b On Sunday afternoons.
- c Germany or Italy.
- d At six o'clock.
- e I usually spend time with my friends.
- f He's my brother's friend.
- g His friend, Li.
- h Because I don't have a car.

#### D Choose the correct alternative.

- 1 When / How / What time does class start?
- 2 Who / How / What do you spell your surname?
- 3 What / Who / How music do you like?
- 4 Where / When / What does Andreas live?
- 5 Who / When / How do you work for?
- 6 Who / Why / What do you like jazz music?

## PRONUNCIATION

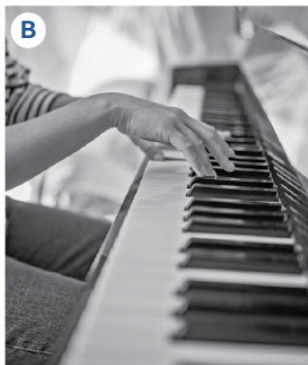
### 3 7.01 | sentence stress | Listen to the questions. Underline the main stressed words.

- 1 Where do you live?
- 2 Who do you live with?
- 3 What do you do?
- 4 When do you work?
- 5 How do you do it?
- 6 Why do you like it?



## LISTENING

**4A** **7.02** | Listen to the interview. Tick the activities that the speakers talk about.



**B** **7.02** | Listen again. Choose the correct alternative.

- 1 Zorah runs / swims almost every day.
- 2 She cooks lots of Italian / Thai food.
- 3 She drinks coffee / green tea every morning.
- 4 She has a long bath / shower every evening.
- 5 She paints pictures / takes photos of people.
- 6 She visits her family / friends at the weekend.

**C** **7.02** | Listen again. Choose the questions you hear.

- 1 What do you do to stay healthy?
- 2 What do you usually cook?
- 3 Why do you drink green tea?
- 4 How do you relax?
- 5 What do you paint?
- 6 Where do you go at the weekend?

## WRITING

### a blog entry; punctuation

**5A** Read the comment. Are the statements True (T) or False (F)?

- 1 Kristof doesn't usually relax on weekdays.
- 2 Kristof usually goes to bed early on weekdays.
- 3 He reads the newspaper on Saturday morning.
- 4 Kristof and his friend dance on Saturday afternoon.
- 5 Kristof usually cooks Italian food with his friends.
- 6 He never cleans his apartment on Sundays.

### What do you do to relax? Write and tell us what makes you feel relaxed.

I have a very difficult and busy job. On weekdays, I usually get home from work late, have dinner and go to bed at half past twelve. At the weekend I do lots of things to relax. On Saturday mornings, I play the piano, read my book, listen to music, or go for a long walk. My best friend and I are in a salsa club and on Saturday afternoons we dance together. We're not very good, but we love it! I always spend Saturday evenings with my friends. We cook a meal together (usually Italian food) then watch a film. On Sundays, I always clean my apartment, have a long bath and go to bed early.

**Kristof**

**B** Match the types of punctuation (1–6) with the punctuation marks (a–e).

- |                    |     |
|--------------------|-----|
| 1 capital letter   | a ? |
| 2 comma            | b A |
| 3 exclamation mark | c , |
| 4 full stop        | d ! |
| 5 question mark    | e . |

**C** Which punctuation mark does not appear in Kristof's comment?

**D** Correct the mistake in each sentence.

- 1 I play tennis run in the park and ride my bike.
- 2 What do you do to stay healthy.
- 3 I play the piano (usually classical music.
- 4 Mika often cooks french food.
- 5 I usually visit my family at the weekend?
- 6 I love my new bike – it's really great,

**6A** Make notes to answer these questions.

- What do you do to relax?
- When do you do it?
- Where do you do it?
- Who do you do it with?

**B** Write a blog post about what you do to relax. Use your notes from Ex 6A to help you. Write 80–100 words.

# Lesson 7B

GRAMMAR | *was, were*

VOCABULARY | common adjectives (3)

PRONUNCIATION | weak and strong forms: *was, were*

## VOCABULARY

### common adjectives (3)

1 A Find ten adjectives in the word snake.

sdfamousylslowdsanazinglofastbrichmkjstrongqueweakfaspoorlpiubestnpositive

B Complete the blog entry with the adjectives in the box. There are three extra adjectives.

amazing best famous fast poor  
positive rich slow weak

### My hero

Roger Federer is the <sup>1</sup>..... tennis player in my country, Switzerland. He is <sup>2</sup>..... around the world. He is a very <sup>3</sup>..... runner and he's really strong. He wins lots of competitions and he is really <sup>4</sup>..... – he has lots of money. He's also friendly and <sup>5</sup>..... – he always thinks life and people are good. To me, he's an <sup>6</sup>..... person!

C Select a word to fill the gaps.

- Neymar is a ..... footballer from Brazil.  
a weak      b best      c famous
- Petra's family are very ..... – they have lots of money.  
a poor      b rich      c strong
- Mika's ..... because he swims every day.  
a famous      b strong      c poor
- Osman's is the ..... restaurant in town.  
a best      b amazing      c weak
- I can type but I'm very .....  
a strong      b positive      c slow
- My mother is a very ..... person – she's always happy.  
a best      b fast      c positive
- I love the new sports centre – it's .....!  
a amazing      b rich      c best
- Your password is very ..... Can you change it?  
a famous      b weak      c fast

## GRAMMAR

### *was, were*

2 A Choose the correct alternative.

- My grandmother **was** / **were** a famous singer.
- My parents **weren't** / **wasn't** rich.
- Where **was** / **were** you yesterday?
- It **wasn't** / **were** Yuri's birthday last week.
- I **was** / **wasn't** at the cinema yesterday evening.
- Was** / **Were** the food good at the café yesterday?
- My grandparents **were** / **was** from big families.
- A: Was Ahmed in class yesterday?  
B: Yes, he **was** / **were**.

B The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

- My parents was on holiday in China last week.  
a are      b were      c wasn't
- The tennis player Emma Raducanu is born in Canada.  
a are      b were      c was
- Who were your childhood hero?  
a was      b are      c weren't
- A: Was Zinedine Zidane a famous singer?  
B: No, he were not.  
a weren't      b was      c wasn't

C Complete the conversations with *was(n't)* or *were(n't)*.

- A: Where <sup>1</sup>..... you yesterday evening?  
B: I <sup>2</sup>..... at the cinema.
- A: How <sup>1</sup>..... your holiday?  
B: It <sup>2</sup>..... amazing!
- A: <sup>1</sup>..... you born in France?  
B: No, I <sup>2</sup>..... I <sup>3</sup>..... born in the UK.
- A: Who <sup>1</sup>..... your childhood friends?  
B: Amy and Abby. They <sup>2</sup>..... in my class.
- A: <sup>1</sup>..... your grandparents rich?  
B: No, they <sup>2</sup>..... They <sup>3</sup>..... poor.
- A: <sup>1</sup>..... Yuri in the school football team?  
B: Yes, he <sup>2</sup>..... He <sup>3</sup>..... very fast.

## PRONUNCIATION

3 A 7.03 | weak and strong forms: *was, were* | Listen to the sentences. Are the underlined words strong (S) or weak (W) forms?

- Was it your birthday last week?
- Yes, it was.
- Was the restaurant good?
- Yes, it was. The food was amazing!
- Were you at the cinema last night?
- No, we weren't. We were at work.

B 7.03 | Listen again and repeat.



## READING

**4A** Read the text. Select a word or phrase to fill the gap.

### A(n) ..... person

Who was your childhood hero? Write and tell us:

- Who were they?
- Are they your hero now?
- Why were they your hero?

- a strong
- b amazing
- c rich

**B** Read the first two paragraphs of the article and look at the photos. Which photo (A–C) matches the person in the article?

**C** Read the text again. Are the statements True (T) or False (F)?

- 1 Nonna's parents were born in Valparaiso.
- 2 Nonna's family was very big.
- 3 Nonna was famous around the world.
- 4 Nonna was a teacher at a university in Buenos Aires.
- 5 Nonna tells Elena about when she was young.
- 6 Elena and Nonna sometimes dance the tango together.



☰ 🔍

## My hero

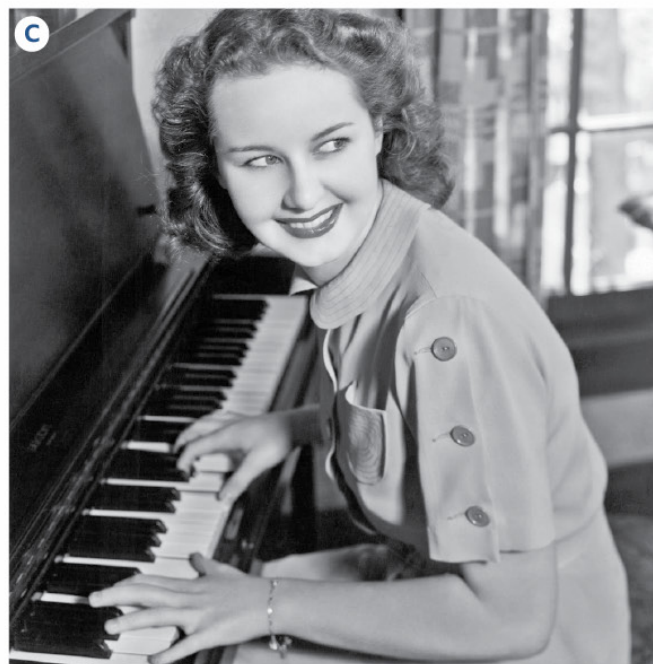
**Elena Larios | 12 October**

My hero isn't a famous sports person or actor – it's my Nonna (grandmother). She's amazing! She's 95 years old, but she plays tennis, swims and dances! Nonna was born in Valparaiso in Chile. Her parents were from Italy, so Nonna speaks Italian and Spanish. She is from a very big family (eight children) and she was the only girl.

When Nonna was young, she was a dancer. She wasn't famous all around the world, but she was famous in Latin America – she says she was the best dancer in Chile! Sometimes she shows me old photos – she was beautiful in her dance clothes!

After she was a dancer, Nonna was a teacher at a big school in Valparaiso and the mother of six children – she was very busy but always happy! She's an amazing cook. When I was a child, my favourite place was Nonna's kitchen. Her pasta and ice cream were the best!

I visit Nonna every Saturday and we spend the afternoon together. We usually sit in the garden and talk – Nonna has lots of interesting stories. She's a very positive person, and she always listens to me and helps me with my problems. Sometimes we dance together – I love salsa, but I can't dance the tango!





# Lesson 7C

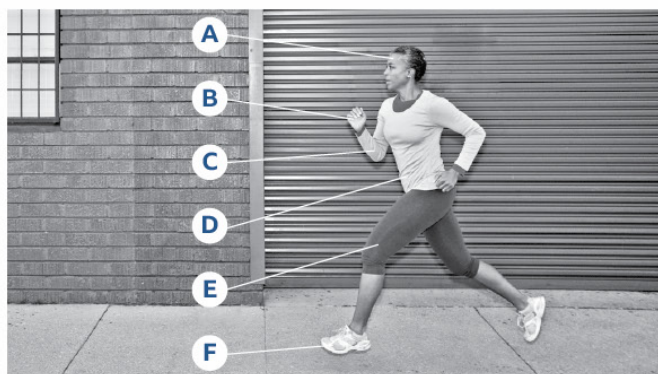
HOW TO ... | say you're not well  
VOCABULARY | parts of the body  
PRONUNCIATION | word stress

## VOCABULARY

### parts of the body

1 Match the words (1–6) with the parts of the body (A–F).

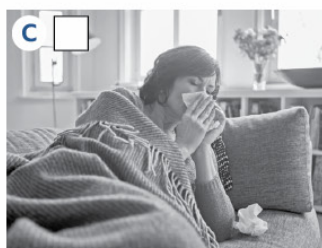
- |        |        |           |
|--------|--------|-----------|
| 1 foot | 3 arm  | 5 leg     |
| 2 head | 4 hand | 6 stomach |



## How to ...

### say you're not well

2 A 7.04 | Listen and match the photos (A–C) with the conversations (1–3).



B 7.04 | Listen again. Choose the correct answer.

- Zoe has got a cold and .....  
a a stomach ache   b an earache   c a toothache
- She is at .....  
a work   b school   c home
- Chen is .....  
a in bed   b at the doctor's   c in hospital
- She can't ...  
a go to work   b go for dinner   c go to school
- Alexis wasn't .....  
a at work   b at home   c at school
- Alexis has got a stomach ache and .....  
a a headache   b backache   c earache

## PRONUNCIATION

3 A 7.05 | word stress | Complete the table with the words in the box. Then listen and check.

backache   a cold   earache   a headache  
stomach ache   toothache

●●	●●	●●●	●●●

B 7.05 | Listen again and repeat.

## SPEAKING

4 A Complete the conversation with the words in the box.

get hurt poor problem  
sorry stay well wrong

A: Hello, Sadie.

B: Hi Emil. I'm really <sup>1</sup> ....., but I can't come to work today.

A: What's the <sup>2</sup> ..?

B: I don't feel <sup>3</sup> ..

A: What's <sup>4</sup> ..?

B: I've got a really bad headache and my eyes <sup>5</sup> ..

A: <sup>6</sup> ..... you.

B: I'm sorry about work today.

A: It's OK. You <sup>7</sup> ..... at home and rest.

B: Thank you.

A: <sup>8</sup> ..... well soon.

B: Thanks.

B 7.06 | Listen to the conversation and check your answers.

C 7.07 | You are B in the conversation in Ex 4A. Listen and speak after the beep. Record the conversation if you can.

D Listen to your recording and compare it with the model in Ex 4A.

# Lesson 7D

GRAMMAR | imperatives  
LISTENING | activity tips

## GRAMMAR

### imperatives

**1 A** Match the sentence beginnings (1–8) with the endings (a–h).

- |                    |                         |
|--------------------|-------------------------|
| 1 Open your books  | a in the sea.           |
| 2 Don't swim       | b your phone in class.  |
| 3 Please be        | c your passport.        |
| 4 Don't forget     | d at page 20.           |
| 5 Never use        | e the teacher.          |
| 6 Don't take       | f photos in the museum. |
| 7 Always listen to | g down, please.         |
| 8 Sit              | h quiet in the library. |

**B** The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

- You please be quiet.  
a Please be    b Be you    c Be please
- No play ball games in the park.  
a Not play    b Don't play    c Play not
- Never don't be late for work.  
a Don't never be    b Always don't be  
c Never be
- Eat always breakfast!  
a Always eat breakfast!    b Eat breakfast always!  
c Always you eat breakfast!

**C** Complete the rules with the positive or negative imperative form of the verbs in the box.

ask be bring do eat have  
listen speak use worry

### English class rules

- ..... on time for class.
- ..... to the teacher.
- ..... your phone in class.
- ..... a pen and notebook or a tablet to class.
- ..... lots of English!
- ..... the teacher for help.
- ..... food.
- ..... your homework.
- ..... about your mistakes.
- ..... fun!

## LISTENING

**2 A** **7.08** | Listen and match the activities (a–e) with the speakers (Corinne and Jesse). There are two extra activities.

- Corinne
- Jesse
- yoga
- play football
- play cricket
- go for a run
- play tennis

**B** **7.08** | Listen again. Are the statements True (T) or False (F)?

- You can go swimming at the new sports centre.
- Jesse goes to yoga classes.
- Corrine does yoga in the park every day.
- Corrine always does yoga alone.
- Jesse doesn't have time for exercise during the week.
- Jesse does sport with his friends at the weekend.
- Jesse listens to his favourite podcasts when he runs.
- Corrine wants to play cricket.

**C** **7.08** | Listen again. Complete the tips with the correct verb. You sometimes need to use negative forms.

drink eat listen remember  
take walk wear (x2)

### Tips for yoga

- ..... comfortable clothes
- ..... to breathe
- ..... a big meal before class
- ..... a friend to class with you

### Tips for a run

- ..... for five or ten minutes first
- ..... good shoes
- ..... lots of water
- ..... to music you love



# Lesson 8A

GRAMMAR | past simple: regular verbs

VOCABULARY | common verbs (2)

PRONUNCIATION | -ed endings

## VOCABULARY

### common verbs (2)

**1 A** Match the sentence beginnings (1–10) with the endings (a–j).

- 1 We always book
  - 2 Stefan plans
  - 3 I never change
  - 4 At the weekend they like to walk
  - 5 I always stay in
  - 6 I usually travel
  - 7 On holiday I like to relax
  - 8 I like to arrive
  - 9 I always try
  - 10 I don't want to
- a my plans.
  - b and do nothing.
  - c to France on holiday.
  - d at the airport early.
  - e tickets online, not by phone.
  - f visit museums at the weekend.
  - g around the park.
  - h every minute of his holidays.
  - i an expensive hotel.
  - j different types of food on holiday.

**B** Complete the verbs in the text.

At the weekend I don't usually go out – I <sup>1</sup>s..... at home and do nothing. I'm tired and I <sup>2</sup>w..... to <sup>3</sup>r..... But sometimes I <sup>4</sup>c..... my plans and my friends and I <sup>5</sup>t..... to a different city for a weekend break. We usually <sup>6</sup>a..... on Friday and leave on Sunday. We always <sup>7</sup>b..... train tickets and a hotel room online, but we don't <sup>8</sup>p..... every minute of the weekend. We like to <sup>9</sup>w..... around the city centre, take photos and visit famous places. Often, we go to a local restaurant and <sup>10</sup>t..... some typical food.

**C** Choose the correct alternative.

- 1 My parents **stay** / **book** / **travel** the same hotel for their summer holiday every year.
- 2 Sai never **travels** / **walks** / **arrives** early – she's always late!
- 3 I don't like trains so I usually **change** / **travel** / **book** by bus.
- 4 On holiday, we go to restaurants and **try** / **want** / **plan** different food.
- 5 Javi never **relaxes** / **changes** / **stays** his routine. He does the same thing every day!
- 6 I usually stay in a hotel, but this year I **want** / **change** / **travel** to do something different.

## GRAMMAR

### past simple: regular verbs

**2 A** Complete the sentences with the past simple form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 Last summer I ..... (stay) at an amazing hotel at the beach.
- 2 He ..... (not want) to clean his apartment at the weekend.
- 3 It was cold yesterday so we ..... (change) our plans.
- 4 I ..... (try) Japanese food for the first time last year – it was great!
- 5 We ..... (not arrive) at the hotel early last night. We were late.
- 6 Last year Kasia and her friends ..... (travel) from London to Istanbul by bike!
- 7 They ..... (stop) the football game because the weather was bad.
- 8 She ..... (study) French at school but now she can't remember it.

**B** The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

- 1 Kwame stays at home and relaxed last weekend.  
a did stay      b didn't stayed      c stayed
- 2 I not booked a table at the restaurant, and it was busy.  
a book      b didn't booked      c didn't book
- 3 When I was at school, classes do finish at 4 o'clock.  
a finishes      b finished      c finish
- 4 I didn't watched television last night. I listened to a podcast.  
a didn't watch      b don't watch      c watch

**C** Complete the email with the past simple of the words in the box.

be book look love not like not want  
plan stay travel try visit walk

Hey Sayyid,

Nice to hear from you! It's great that you're in Tokyo now. It's my favourite city! My brother and I <sup>1</sup>..... there last year and <sup>2</sup>..... for a week. It <sup>3</sup>..... amazing! We <sup>4</sup>..... to stay in a hotel so we <sup>5</sup>..... an apartment in the city centre. It was very small, but we <sup>6</sup>..... it. We <sup>7</sup>..... every minute of every day and we were very busy! We <sup>8</sup>..... around the city centre and <sup>9</sup>..... at the big buildings. One day, we <sup>10</sup>..... the fish market and <sup>11</sup>..... some typical food. My brother <sup>12</sup>..... it, but I loved it!

Write and tell me about your visit!

Alina





## PRONUNCIATION

**3 A** **8.01 | -ed endings** | Listen to the pronunciation of the **-ed** endings and choose the correct sound (a–c).

- |             |       |       |        |
|-------------|-------|-------|--------|
| 1 travelled | a /t/ | b /d/ | c /ɪd/ |
| 2 walked    | a /t/ | b /d/ | c /ɪd/ |
| 3 watched   | a /t/ | b /d/ | c /ɪd/ |
| 4 started   | a /t/ | b /d/ | c /ɪd/ |
| 5 stopped   | a /t/ | b /d/ | c /ɪd/ |
| 6 planned   | a /t/ | b /d/ | c /ɪd/ |
| 7 arrived   | a /t/ | b /d/ | c /ɪd/ |
| 8 visited   | a /t/ | b /d/ | c /ɪd/ |
| 9 wanted    | a /t/ | b /d/ | c /ɪd/ |
| 10 liked    | a /t/ | b /d/ | c /ɪd/ |

**B** **8.01** | Listen again and repeat.



## LISTENING

**4 A** **8.02** | Listen to the conversation. Where was Sally at the weekend?

- a Brussels      b Paris      c Amsterdam

**B** **8.02** | Listen again. Choose the things in the photos (A–F) you hear.

Photo A ..... Photo D .....

Photo B ..... Photo E .....

Photo C ..... Photo F .....

**C** **8.02** | Listen to the conversation again and choose the correct alternative.

- Sally and Luisa arrived at **5 p.m.** / **7 p.m.** on Friday.
- They stayed in a hotel next to the **museum** / **river**.
- They **stayed** / **didn't stay** in the hotel they booked online.
- The people in the hotel were very **happy** / **friendly**.
- The food in the hotel restaurant was **cheap** / **expensive**.
- The weather was **good** / **bad**.
- They tried **cakes** / **cheese** at the food market.
- On Sunday they visited **a museum** / **some shops**.

# Lesson 8B

GRAMMAR | past simple: irregular verbs  
VOCABULARY | free-time activities; time phrases  
PRONUNCIATION | silent letters: *didn't*

## VOCABULARY

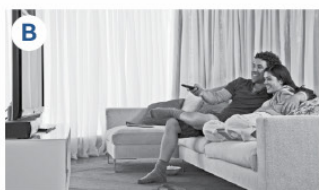
### free-time activities

1 A Complete the phrases with the verbs in the box.

buy do go have play meet see watch

- 1 watch television **B** .....
- 2 ..... a friend .....
- 3 ..... clothes .....
- 4 ..... a game .....
- 5 ..... to a party .....
- 6 ..... a barbecue .....
- 7 ..... a sport .....
- 8 ..... a film .....

B Match the photos (A–H) with the phrases in Ex 1A.



C Complete the blog post with the verbs from Ex 1A.

☰
▼

### What do you usually do at the weekend?

I usually get up late, <sup>1</sup> ..... a shower, then make breakfast. After breakfast, I go to the supermarket and <sup>2</sup> ..... food. Then I sometimes <sup>3</sup> ..... to the park or <sup>4</sup> ..... exercise. In the afternoon I often <sup>5</sup> ..... a video game or <sup>6</sup> ..... YouTube. In the evening, I usually <sup>7</sup> ..... friends and sometimes we <sup>8</sup> ..... a film at the cinema.

### time phrases

2 Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences.

- 1 Casey wasn't at the party ..... evening.  
a last                      b yesterday                      c on
- 2 They moved to South Korea ..... ago.  
a two years                      b in two years                      c on two years
- 3 I didn't do any sport ..... week because I had a cold.  
a on                      b last                      c past
- 4 Kai finished school ..... 2020.  
a last                      b on                      c in
- 5 I'm tired. I went to bed late ..... night.  
a yesterday                      b last                      c ago
- 6 Did you meet your friends ..... Friday?  
a on                      b in                      c yesterday

## GRAMMAR

### past simple: irregular verbs

3 A Write the infinitive of the past simple verb.

- |        |           |         |       |
|--------|-----------|---------|-------|
| 1 did  | <u>do</u> | 5 slept | ..... |
| 2 went | .....     | 6 took  | ..... |
| 3 saw  | .....     | 7 were  | ..... |
| 4 knew | .....     | 8 drank | ..... |

B The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

- 1 We have a barbecue in the park last Saturday.  
a do have                      b had                      c did had
- 2 Iker didn't came to the party last night.  
a don't come                      b don't came                      c didn't come
- 3 We did ate pizza for dinner yesterday.  
a ate                      b don't ate                      c eat
- 4 Florian reads this book last year.  
a do read                      b read                      c does read

C Complete the text with the correct past simple form of the verb in brackets.

I <sup>1</sup> ..... (have) a great weekend! On Saturday, I <sup>2</sup> ..... (not get) up early – I stayed in bed until 10 o'clock and <sup>3</sup> ..... (read) my book! Then I <sup>4</sup> ..... (meet) some friends for lunch in a Mexican restaurant near my house. The food <sup>5</sup> ..... (not be) very good, but we had a nice time. In the afternoon, we <sup>6</sup> ..... (go) to the park and played tennis. Then my friends <sup>7</sup> ..... (come) to my house and I <sup>8</sup> ..... (make) dinner for us.



## PRONUNCIATION

### 4A 8.03 | silent letters: *didn't* | Listen to the sentences.

Tick the sentences where you hear a **t** in *didn't*.

- 1 He didn't go to work yesterday.
- 2 I didn't do any exercise last week.
- 3 We didn't have a barbecue at the weekend.
- 4 They didn't meet us yesterday.
- 5 I didn't get the bus to work today.
- 6 She didn't read the email I sent.

### B 8.04 | Read the sentences. Then listen and repeat.

- 1 They didn't get up early.
- 2 I didn't drink any coffee.
- 3 We didn't go out last night.
- 4 She didn't buy me a present.

## READING

### 5A Read the texts. Match the photos (A–D) with Text 1 or 2.

### What an amazing weekend!

Tell us about a great weekend and win a weekend break for two!

**1** My weekends aren't usually interesting – I watch a series or play video games because I'm too tired to go out. But two weeks ago, I went glamping with friends! We stayed in a big tent next to a lake. On Saturday, we swam in the lake and relaxed. In the evening we had a barbecue and sat outside. We were tired and went to bed early. On Sunday, we went for a long walk in the mountains. It was beautiful and I took lots of photos with my camera. It was great to do something different, and I didn't use my phone all weekend!

Otto Weber

**2** It was my 30th birthday last week. I had an amazing weekend! On Saturday my brother had a big party for me at his house. He didn't tell me about the party – he said it was a small family dinner with our parents, but when I arrived at his house, all my friends were there! My brother cooked my favourite food and we ate outside in the garden. After dinner, there was birthday cake, and everyone sang *Happy Birthday* to me. Then we played music and danced until midnight. On Sunday we all went to the beach, swam in the sea, and relaxed. It was perfect!

Gloria Faddul

### B Read the texts again. Choose Otto (O), Gloria (G) or both (B).

- 1 Who usually stays in at the weekend?
- 2 Who ate outside on Saturday?
- 3 Who swam in the sea?
- 4 Who went for a long walk?
- 5 Who stayed up late on Saturday?
- 6 Who spent the weekend with friends?

### C Read the texts again. Are the statements True (T) or False (F)?

- 1 Otto doesn't usually spend time with his friends at the weekend.
- 2 He stayed in a tent three weeks ago.
- 3 He didn't use his camera or phone all weekend.
- 4 It was Gloria's 30th birthday last year.
- 5 She didn't know about her birthday party.
- 6 Gloria listened to music and danced at the party.

## WRITING

### write a group chat; linkers: *and, but, then*

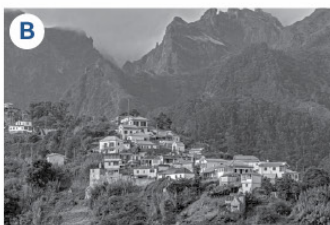
#### 6A Read the text. Tick the things the writer did.

had a bath   met friends   played video games  
visited family   went to a café   went for a run

I'm always busy at the weekends <sup>1</sup>**and / but / then** I don't relax. I work on Saturdays, and on Sundays I always meet friends. Last weekend was different – I spent it alone and it was great! On Saturday, I got up late. I had breakfast in the garden, <sup>2</sup>**and / but / then** it was very cold so I didn't stay outside for long. I had a long bath, <sup>3</sup>**and / but / then** I walked to a café and bought a sandwich. I went home <sup>4</sup>**and / but / then** played video games. In the evening, I watched a film, <sup>5</sup>**and / but / then** it wasn't very good. On Sunday morning, I went for a run, <sup>6</sup>**and / but / then** I went home and did nothing for the rest of the day!

### B Read the text again. Choose the correct alternative.

### C Write about a good weekend. Use the linkers *and, but* and *then*. Write 80–100 words.





# Lesson 8C

HOW TO ... | buy a travel ticket

VOCABULARY | transport and tickets

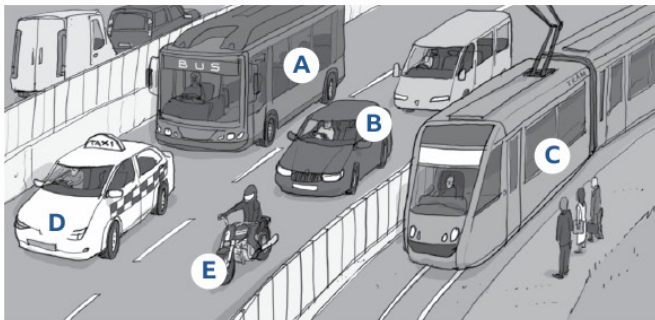
PRONUNCIATION | word stress in prices

## VOCABULARY

### transport and tickets

1 A Match the words (1–8) with the pictures (A–H).

- |        |             |
|--------|-------------|
| 1 bike | 5 motorbike |
| 2 boat | 6 plane     |
| 3 bus  | 7 taxi      |
| 4 car  | 8 tram      |



B Complete the transport words with vowels (a, e, i, o, u).

- |                              |                          |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 g...t...                   | 5 m...nthly p...ss       |
| 2 pl...tf...rm               | 6 r...t...rn             |
| 3 s...ngl...                 | 7 p...ss...ng...r        |
| 4 t...ck...t...m...ch...n... | 8 t...ck...t...ff...c... |

C Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences.

- I buy a ..... because I travel to work by bus every day.  
a monthly pass    b single    c passenger
- The bus was very busy. There were lots of ..... on it.  
a tickets    b passengers    c returns
- The plane leaves from ..... 8.  
a platform    b ticket office    c gate
- A ..... to Athens, please. I want to go today and come back tomorrow.  
a single    b monthly pass    c return
- I bought my monthly pass from a person in the .....  
a ticket machine    b gate    c ticket office
- Which ..... is it for the Budapest train?  
a platform    b gate    c passenger

## How to ...

### buy a travel ticket

2 A 8.05 | Listen to the conversations. Choose the correct alternative.

#### Conversation 1

- The speaker wants a **single** / **return** ticket to.
- The train arrives in San José at **8.45** / **9.30**.

#### Conversation 2

- Two **single** / **return** tickets cost €28.
- The bus leaves from gate **1** / **5**.

#### Conversation 3

- The pass costs **£62.50** / **£72.50**.
- The speaker buys a monthly pass for the **bus** / **train**.

B 8.06 | Listen and write the four sentences that you hear. You will hear each sentence only once.

## PRONUNCIATION

3 8.07 | **word stress in prices** | Listen and complete the prices. Then listen again and repeat.

- |            |             |             |
|------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1 £21..... | 3 \$.....45 | 5 £.....90  |
| 2 €12..... | 4 €82.....  | 6 \$35..... |

## SPEAKING

4 A 8.08 | Complete the conversation with the words in the box. Then listen and check your answers.

arrive leave much next platform single

- A: Can I help you?  
B: Can I have a <sup>1</sup> ..... to Málaga please?  
A: For today?  
B: Yes, please.  
A: For what time?  
B: What time's the <sup>2</sup> ..... train?  
A: Let me check. It leaves at 11.45.  
B: And when does it <sup>3</sup> ..... in Málaga?  
A: It arrives at 2.30 p.m.  
B: That's great.  
A: OK. That's one single to Málaga.  
B: How <sup>4</sup> ..... is it?  
A: That's €32.50.  
B: Thanks. What <sup>5</sup> ..... is it?  
A: The Málaga trains <sup>6</sup> ..... from platform 3.  
B: Thanks very much.

B 8.09 | You are B in in Ex 4A. Listen and speak after the beep. Record the conversation if you can.

C Listen to your recording and compare it with the model in Ex 4A.

# Lesson 8D

GRAMMAR | *want, would like*  
READING | try something different!

## GRAMMAR

### want, would like

#### 1 A Choose the correct alternative.

- 1 I / I'd like to learn the piano. I love music!
- 2 **Would / Do** you want to go to the cinema?
- 3 Tomas would **like / likes** to go to Brazil.
- 4 When would they like **meet / to meet** us?
- 5 I **don't want / wouldn't** a cup of coffee.
- 6 **Would / Do** you like basketball?
- 7 She **wouldn't / doesn't** like to go to the party.
- 8 Why does he **want / like** a new bike?

#### B The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

- 1 I love my job, so I don't like to change it.  
a would like      b wouldn't like      c not want
- 2 She'd want to go to the cinema on Saturday.  
a She wants      b She would      c She like
- 3 I'd want a glass of water, please.  
a I like      b I would want      c I want
- 4 Cas would like travel to India.  
a would like to      b wants      c likes

#### C Complete the conversations with the words in the box.

'd do (x3) help go like (x3) play want would

- 1 A: Where <sup>1</sup> ..... you like to go on holiday?  
B: I'd like to <sup>2</sup> ..... to Rome.  
A: Why <sup>3</sup> ..... you want to go to Rome?  
B: Because I <sup>4</sup> ..... to see the Colosseum.
- 2 A: Can I <sup>5</sup> ..... you?  
B: Yes, I'd <sup>6</sup> ..... a cheese sandwich, please.  
A: <sup>7</sup> ..... you want white or brown bread?  
B: I <sup>8</sup> ..... like brown, please.
- 3 A: Do you want to <sup>9</sup> ..... tennis?  
B: No, thanks. I don't really <sup>10</sup> ..... tennis.  
A: What <sup>11</sup> ..... you like to do?  
B: I <sup>12</sup> ..... to swim.

## READING

#### 2 A Read the text. Select a word or phrase to fill the gap.

### Be happy and healthy!

Do you want to do exercise and feel good?

Come to the new ..... class at the Hobby Centre.

Thursdays at 8 p.m.

- a guitar      b yoga      c painting

#### B Match the activities (1–6) with the photos (A–F).

- 1 painting
- 2 mountain biking
- 3 origami
- 4 salsa
- 5 skateboarding
- 6 yoga



#### C Read the article. Match the paragraphs (1–3) with a photo from Ex 1B.

### Try something different!

**Blogger Raul Randell wanted to do something different, so last week he tried three new classes.**

I love sport and I do lots of exercise, but I can't dance! On Monday, I went to a salsa class with my friend Sandra – she's a fantastic dancer! It was really good exercise, but it was difficult, and I wasn't very good. I'm happy that I tried the class, but I'm not a dancer!

My daughter got a skateboard for her birthday and now she wants me to learn! I had a skateboard when I was young, but I can't remember how to use it. On Wednesday, we went to a skateboard class in the park near my house. There were only four of us, the teacher was great, and she showed us how to do lots of things. I loved it and I really want to go again next week!

The third class I tried was origami – a traditional Japanese paper art. At school, I wasn't very good at art, but I'd like to learn origami – I think it's an amazing skill. The class on Saturday was two hours and we made different things – a bird, a flower, a cat and a boat. My bird wasn't bad, but my flower was a disaster! But it was good to do something different and it made me feel happy.

#### D Read the article again. Are the statements True (T) or False (F)?

- 1 Raul went to a salsa class with his wife.
- 2 Raul wanted to learn salsa because it's good exercise.
- 3 Raul's daughter wants to learn to skateboard.
- 4 Raul wants to go to the skateboarding class again.
- 5 Raul was bad at art when he was at school.
- 6 Raul felt tired after the origami class.



## GRAMMAR

1 A Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences.

- 1 ..... do you sit next to in class?  
a When      b Who      c How
- 2 ..... do you finish work?  
a What      b Who      c What time
- 3 ..... are you from?  
a Where      b How      c What
- 4 ..... is your favourite music?  
a When      b Why      c What
- 5 ..... does he walk to work?  
a Why      b Who      c What
- 6 ..... do you say 'boat' in Italian?  
a Where      b How      c Who

B Write questions for the answers.

- 1 What time do you go to bed?  
I go to bed at 10 o'clock.
- 2 .....  
They live in Bilgoraj.
- 3 .....  
My favourite sport is tennis.
- 4 .....  
I drink green tea because it's good for me.
- 5 .....  
I live with Adoma and Lynsey.
- 6 .....  
You spell it P-A-S-S-E-N-G-E-R.
- 7 .....  
I visit my grandparents on Saturdays.
- 8 .....  
I have pasta or rice for dinner.

2 Choose the correct alternative.

- 1 A: Where **was** / **were** Mila yesterday morning?  
B: I don't know. She **was** / **wasn't** at work.
- 2 A: When **were** / **was** you in China?  
B: I **were** / **was** there in 2010.
- 3 A: Why **were** / **weren't** you at work yesterday?  
B: I **was** / **were** at the doctor's.
- 4 A: How **were** / **was** the party last night?  
B: It **were** / **was** amazing!
- 5 A: What **were** / **was** your parents' jobs?  
B: They **were** / **was** teachers.
- 6 A: What time **was** / **were** the barbecue yesterday?  
B: It **were** / **was** at 3 o'clock.

3 A Write the irregular past simple form of the verbs.

- |               |               |
|---------------|---------------|
| 1 buy .....   | 6 see .....   |
| 2 come .....  | 7 leave ..... |
| 3 give .....  | 8 sleep ..... |
| 4 get .....   | 9 write ..... |
| 5 drink ..... | 10 do .....   |

4 A Complete the rules with the correct imperative form of the verbs in the box.

buy eat or drink have run take use

### SILVER STAR CINEMA

- 1 ..... a ticket (✓)
- 2 ..... mobile phones (x)
- 3 ..... photos (x)

### London Road Pool Rules

- 4 ..... near the water (x)
- 5 ..... in the pool (x)
- 6 ..... a shower before you swim (✓)

B Complete the text with the correct past simple form of the verbs in brackets.

### The best summer

Last summer Gil and I <sup>1</sup> ..... (travel) to Peru because we <sup>2</sup> ..... (want) to learn Spanish. We <sup>3</sup> ..... (stay) in a school in Cusco for one month with lots of students from all over the world! We <sup>4</sup> ..... (talk) to them about their countries and <sup>5</sup> ..... (learn) a lot. We were in class every morning but we <sup>6</sup> ..... (not study) in the afternoons. We <sup>7</sup> ..... (visit) interesting places in Cusco or <sup>8</sup> ..... (play) games with the other students.

One weekend we visited Machu Picchu, a famous place near Cusco. We <sup>9</sup> ..... (walk) for seven hours to get there. We were very tired when we <sup>10</sup> ..... (arrive) at our hotel in Aguas Calientes. The next day we <sup>11</sup> ..... (walk) around Machu Picchu again. It was amazing! We <sup>12</sup> ..... (not want) to leave!



5 Choose the correct alternative.

- 1 I'd like / I'd want / I liked to visit the USA next summer.
- 2 Barbara **doesn't like** / **doesn't want** / **don't want** to go to the park today.
- 3 **Would you** / **Would you want** / **Would you like** a glass of water?
- 4 Victor **would like to** / **likes** / **wants to** tennis. He plays every week.
- 5 Where would you like **to go** / **go** / **goes** on holiday?
- 6 I'd / I'm like / I'd like a cup of coffee, please.



# VOCABULARY

## 6 Find the incorrect phrase in each word web.

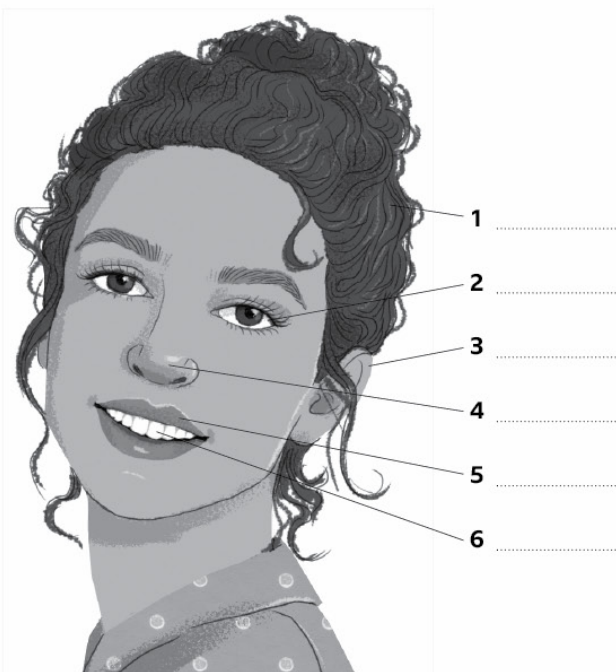
- A** a room **clean** a meal  
my kitchen my apartment
- B** my favourite food **cook** a meal  
some vegetables the shopping
- C** nothing **do** the shopping  
my hands an hour or two online
- D** the ducks **feed** a meal  
the baby the cat
- E** a shower **have** a bath  
a hot drink my kitchen

## 7 Put the verbs in bold into the correct sentence.

- Everyone knows Taylor Swift in my country. She's very **fast**. **famous**
- Berat's Kitchen is the **positive** restaurant in town. The food there is great!
- Wei has a lot of money. He is very **poor**.
- My grandmother is a very **famous** person. She always thinks things are good.
- Antoni can run 100 metres in 15 seconds. He's really **best**.
- I can't work here because the WiFi is very **amazing**.
- I lost my wallet, so I'm **weak** at the moment.
- I love my new car. It's **rich**!

## 8 Label the picture with the words in the box.

ear eye hair mouth nose tooth



## 9 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- We ..... Vietnamese food for the first time last week. It was amazing!  
**a** booked **b** tried **c** planned
- Mehmet always ..... the same hotel room.  
**a** changes **b** arrives **c** books
- Francesco always ..... by car.  
**a** travels **b** relaxes **c** wants
- Do you usually ..... in a hotel or an apartment on holiday?  
**a** change **b** travel **c** stay
- At the weekend I ..... and do nothing.  
**a** relax **b** want **c** stay
- Does Seth ..... every minute of his weekend?  
**a** change **b** plan **c** book

## 10 Choose the correct alternative.

- Aga doesn't **see** / **watch** TV in the evenings.
- How often do you **buy** / **meet** new clothes?
- They **do** / **play** sport every Thursday night.
- Jing never **goes** / **has** to parties because she doesn't like them.
- In the summer we often **have** / **do** a barbecue.
- Do you want to **see** / **go** a film at the cinema on Saturday?

## 11 Complete the phrases with the words in the box.

ago in last on yesterday

- ..... weekend
- ..... night
- ..... morning
- ..... afternoon
- ..... Saturday
- ..... the 21st of May
- ..... 1979
- ..... February
- three years
- a week

## 12 Find ten transport words in the word snake.

as motor bike h d passenger da platform d b s a i t r a m b a d a b o a t a s r e t u r n u p l a n e p o l u n d e r g r o u n d a j k s i n g l e o t a x i h

## GRAMMAR

## be: he/she/it

## 1 Complete the conversations.

- 1 Sybil: Is Ross from the USA?  
Mateo: Yes, he <sup>1</sup> is. He <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ from Washington.  
Sybil: <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ he a student?  
Mateo: No, he <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. He <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ a teacher at a school in Medellin.  
Sybil: Is <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ a big school?  
Mateo: No, <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ isn't. It <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ really small.
- 2 Anil: Who <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ that over there?  
Yann: That <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ my sister's friend.  
Anil: <sup>11</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ is her name?  
Yann: Isave.  
Anil: <sup>12</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ is she from?  
Yann: She <sup>13</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ from Vietnam.  
Anil: <sup>14</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ she nice?  
Yann: Yes, she <sup>15</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. She <sup>16</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ nice.

## possessive adjectives

## 2 Complete the sentences with the possessive adjective of the word in brackets.

- 1 That's my mother. Her name is Joy. (she)  
2 Teo and I are British, but \_\_\_\_\_ parents are from Romania. (we)  
3 I'm a doctor and \_\_\_\_\_ wife is a businesswoman. (I)  
4 Is that your cat? What's \_\_\_\_\_ name? (it)  
5 Where are \_\_\_\_\_ family from? (you)  
6 I'm Jian and this is \_\_\_\_\_ friend Suki. (I)

## have: yes/no questions and answers; I, you, we, they

## 3 Use the prompts to write questions.

- 1 you / have / a car / ?  
2 they / have / any / children / ?  
3 we / have / English class / today / ?  
4 you / have / a / new computer / ?  
5 Ricardo and Jill / have / a / garden / ?  
6 you / have / my glasses / ?

## adverbs of frequency

## 4 Put the adverbs in brackets in the correct place.

- 1 I always drink coffee in the morning. (always)  
2 We eat meat or fish at home. (never)  
3 Do you work at the weekend? (usually)  
4 They have lunch in a café. (sometimes)  
5 I don't have eggs for breakfast. (usually)  
6 Hollie and Wu listen to podcasts. (never)  
7 We eat Japanese food with our friends. (often)  
8 I read the newspaper. (not often)  
9 Do they speak English at home? (always)  
10 I have a bottle of water in my bag. (often)

## VOCABULARY

## countries and nationalities

## 5 Choose the correct alternative.

- 1 A: Hi, I'm Sukhon.  
B: Hi Sukhon. I'm Jasper. Where are you from?  
A: I'm from <sup>1</sup>Thai / Thailand. Are you <sup>2</sup>the USA / American?  
B: No, I'm not. I'm <sup>3</sup>Australia / Australian, but my parents are from <sup>4</sup>the USA / American.
- 2 A: Are they the new students?  
B: Yes, their names are Filipino and Burcu.  
A: Where are they from?  
B: Filipino is <sup>5</sup>Italy / Italian and Burcu is from <sup>6</sup>Turkey / Turkish.  
A: Are you <sup>7</sup>Turkey / Turkish?  
B: No, I'm from <sup>8</sup>Swiss / Switzerland.
- 3 A: Where are you from?  
B: I'm from London. I'm <sup>9</sup>UK / British.  
A: Are you parents from London?  
B: No, they're from <sup>10</sup>France / French. They're from Lyon.  
A: Really? My grandmother is <sup>11</sup>France / French. My grandfather is <sup>12</sup>Brazil / Brazilian.

## numbers 11-100

## 6 Write the words under each number.

14 20

1 \_\_\_\_\_ 5 \_\_\_\_\_

4 10

2 \_\_\_\_\_ 6 \_\_\_\_\_

16 80

3 \_\_\_\_\_ 7 \_\_\_\_\_

12 5

4 \_\_\_\_\_ 8 \_\_\_\_\_

## common adjectives

- 7 Complete the sentences with the adjectives in the box. There are two extra words.

bad beautiful difficult favourite friendly  
happy hot small tired young

- 1 I want to go to bed. It's late and I'm \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 My bedroom is blue. It's my \_\_\_\_\_ colour.
- 3 Dan is very \_\_\_\_\_. He says 'hello' to everybody.
- 4 It's really \_\_\_\_\_ in the classroom. Could you open the window, please?
- 5 The English homework isn't easy, it's \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 This coffee tastes really \_\_\_\_\_. I can't drink it.
- 7 My new bike is great! I'm very \_\_\_\_\_ with it.
- 8 My grandfather isn't \_\_\_\_\_. He's 94.

## clothes

- 8 Complete the words.

- 1 My favourite j\_\_\_\_\_m\_\_\_\_\_r is purple. It's a good colour for me.
- 2 I have a new s\_\_\_\_\_i\_\_\_\_\_ for work. It's black.
- 3 Jane has beautiful new t\_\_\_\_\_us\_\_\_\_\_r\_\_\_\_\_. They're from the new shop in town.
- 4 I love my light blue j\_\_\_\_\_n\_\_\_\_\_. They're really old and comfortable.
- 5 It's cold! Do you have a c\_\_\_\_\_t?
- 6 I always wear a j\_\_\_\_\_c\_\_\_\_\_e\_\_\_\_\_t for work.
- 7 Una's T-s\_\_\_\_\_i\_\_\_\_\_t is pink. It's her favourite colour.
- 8 Excuse me, do you have this d\_\_\_\_\_e\_\_\_\_\_ in a size 12?

## everyday activities

- 9 Complete the verbs in the blog post.

☰
▼

### My day

by Jasmin Peterson, businesswoman

From Monday to Friday, I <sup>1</sup> get up at seven. I have a cup of coffee and check my emails. My husband, Savi, always <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast for us – usually cereal or toast. Then I <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ home at about quarter to eight and go to work. I <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ work at nine. At one o'clock, I <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ lunch in a café. I usually have an egg or cheese sandwich. I <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ work at around 6 p.m. and go home. Savi and I <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ dinner together, usually fish or chicken. After dinner, Savi usually <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ television and I read a book or <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to the radio. We usually <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to bed at eleven o'clock.

👍
💬
🔄

## How to ...

- 10 Complete the words in the conversations.

... ask and answer simple questions

- A: Hello, can I <sup>1</sup>h\_\_\_\_\_ you?  
 B: Yes. I'm a new student.  
 A: Just a <sup>2</sup>m\_\_\_\_\_. What's your name?  
 B: It's Ayse Pamuk.  
 A: How do you spell your <sup>3</sup>s\_\_\_\_\_  
 B: It's P-A-M-U-K.

... have short conversations

- A: Hey George! Good to <sup>4</sup>s\_\_\_\_\_ you!  
 B: Hello, how are <sup>5</sup>t\_\_\_\_\_  
 A: Not <sup>6</sup>b\_\_\_\_\_, thanks. How are you?  
 B: I'm very well.

... shop for clothes

- A: <sup>7</sup>E\_\_\_\_\_ me.  
 B: Yes? Can I help you?  
 A: How <sup>8</sup>m\_\_\_\_\_ are these jeans?  
 B: They're £45.  
 A: Thanks. Can I <sup>9</sup>t\_\_\_\_\_ them on?  
 B: Of course. What <sup>10</sup>s\_\_\_\_\_ are you?  
 A: I'm a 14.

... order in a café

- A: Can I help you?  
 B: Yes. Can I have a <sup>11</sup>c\_\_\_\_\_, please?  
 A: With milk and <sup>12</sup>s\_\_\_\_\_  
 B: Just milk, thank you.  
 A: <sup>13</sup>A\_\_\_\_\_ else?  
 B: Yes, can I have a cheese sandwich, please?  
 A: Brown or <sup>14</sup>w\_\_\_\_\_ bread?  
 B: Brown, please. How <sup>15</sup>m\_\_\_\_\_ is that?  
 A: That's £9.15 please.

- 11 Choose the correct alternative.

### My family

Hil I'm Evan. I'm from Miami in the USA. I <sup>1</sup>am / have a sister and a brother. My sister <sup>2</sup>is / are a digital designer for a Korean company. She has two children, a girl, Abby, and a boy, Leo. They are very <sup>3</sup>old / young – Abby is three and Leo is one. Her husband is from <sup>4</sup>Mexico / Mexican, and they usually speak Spanish at home. <sup>5</sup>My / I brother is a doctor at a hospital. It <sup>6</sup>are / 's a big hospital and <sup>7</sup>his / their job is very <sup>8</sup>difficult / tired. <sup>9</sup>He's / His wife is a doctor too. They <sup>10</sup>not / don't have any children.

I don't see my family during the week, but we <sup>11</sup>never / always have dinner together on Sundays.

How about you? <sup>12</sup>Do / Are you have any brothers or sisters?



## GRAMMAR

## object pronouns

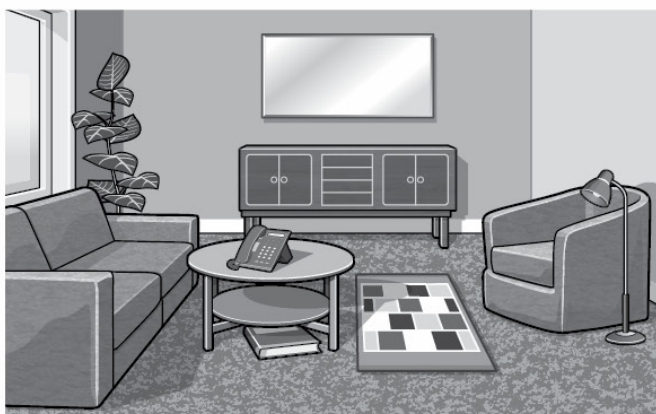
- 1 Replace the words in bold with an object pronoun.
- Ben and Nadiya are my best friends. I see **Ben and Nadiya** *them* every day.
  - I really dislike fish. I never eat **fish**.
  - My sister lives in Busan. I see **my sister** once a year.
  - Where are my glasses? I can't find **my glasses**.
  - My parents live near my husband and me. They visit **my husband and me** every week.
  - This is my new jacket. Do you like **my new jacket**?

## prepositions of place

- 2 Complete the sentences about the picture with the words in the box.

between in front of next to  
on opposite under

- There's a table ..... the sofa.
- There's a phone ..... the table.
- There's a plant ..... the sofa.
- There's a rug ..... the chair and the table.
- There's a book ..... the table.
- The chair is ..... the sofa.

present simple: *wh-* questions

- 3 Choose the correct alternative.
- A: **Where / Who** do you live with?  
B: I live with my friend, Sherrie.
  - A: **Where / What** did you buy your coat?  
B: In the new clothes shop on Forest Road.
  - A: **Why / What** type of music does Nadine like?  
B: She really likes jazz.
  - A: **When / What time** is Joel's birthday?  
B: I think it's in March.
  - A: **Why / How** did you drive to work today?  
B: Because the weather is really bad!
  - A: **What / When** does Patrick usually finish work?  
B: He usually finishes at 6 o'clock.
  - A: **How / Why** do you say 'headache' in Spanish?  
B: You say *dolor de cabeza*.
  - A: **What / Where** did you have for breakfast?  
B: I had toast and eggs.

*there is, there are*

- 4 Complete the messages with the correct form of *there is / are, some, any, a* or *an*.

Greta: Hi! I'm new in the area.

Marcia: Hi! Welcome to Sunny Beach!

Greta: Thanks! OK. <sup>1</sup> .....  
a swimming pool near here?

Marcia: Yes! <sup>2</sup> ..... two  
swimming pools. One is on Green  
Street and one is next to the beach.

Greta: And, are there <sup>3</sup> ..... bookshops?

Marcia: No, there <sup>4</sup> .....

Haruto: Hi Greta, welcome! <sup>5</sup> .....  
any bookshops, but <sup>6</sup> ..... a library  
on Park Road. It's really good.

Greta: Thank you. OK, I have one more question.  
What is the best restaurant in town?

Haruto: Oh, that's difficult! There are  
<sup>7</sup> ..... great restaurants here.

Marcia: There's <sup>8</sup> ..... amazing Turkish  
restaurant on Park Road near the library.

Greta: Is there <sup>9</sup> ..... Korean restaurant?

Haruto: No, there <sup>10</sup> ....., but there's one in  
San Fernando, about 30 minutes from here.

*was, were*

- 5 Complete the blog with *was/were* or *wasn't/weren't*.

Last week I <sup>1</sup> ..... on holiday with my friend Lev.  
We <sup>2</sup> ..... in Saint Petersburg. It <sup>3</sup> .....  
amazing! The buildings <sup>4</sup> ..... beautiful and the  
museum <sup>5</sup> ..... interesting.

Our hotel <sup>6</sup> ..... really good but it <sup>7</sup> ..... on a  
busy street and it <sup>8</sup> ..... quiet. There <sup>9</sup> ..... a  
restaurant in the hotel but there <sup>10</sup> ..... some  
good restaurants near it. It <sup>11</sup> ..... a great holiday  
and we <sup>12</sup> ..... happy to leave.

## past simple: regular verbs

- 6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- Last summer, we ..... (travel) to Mexico. We  
..... (stay) at an amazing apartment at the beach.
- I ..... (study) English when I was at school but I  
..... (not like) it.
- We ..... (not watch) television last night. We  
..... (listen) to a podcast.
- Eunho ..... (try) Polish food for the first time  
last night. He ..... (love) it.
- I ..... (clean) our apartment yesterday but my  
housemate ..... (not help) me.

## VOCABULARY

### common verbs (1)

- 7 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in the box.

call forget get help say thank

- 1 I ..... Fleurie, but she didn't answer her phone.
- 2 My sister always ..... me with my problems.
- 3 My neighbour isn't friendly. He never ..... 'hello'.
- 4 I usually ..... a coffee at the café before work.
- 5 I helped Margot, but she didn't ..... me.

### adjectives (2)

- 8 Put the adjectives in bold into the correct sentence.

- 1 You're **expensive** **late**. Class started at 9 a.m.
- 2 My new sofa was very **wrong**. It was £2,000!
- 3 Sorry, I was **early** – they don't speak Spanish in Brazil!
- 4 I got up very **open** this morning – it was only 5.30 a.m.
- 5 The swimming pool isn't **late**, it's 11 o'clock at night.

### rooms and furniture

- 9 Complete the advert with the words in the box.

armchair bed fridge kitchen  
living table television

The apartment has a big <sup>1</sup> ..... room with a sofa, an <sup>2</sup> ..... and a <sup>3</sup> ..... The bedroom is also big and has a double <sup>4</sup> ..... The <sup>5</sup> ..... has a cooker, a <sup>6</sup> ..... and a <sup>7</sup> ..... and chairs.

### everyday activities (2)

- 10 Choose the correct alternative.

On Saturday I <sup>1</sup> **cleaned** / **washed** my apartment and <sup>2</sup> **spent** / **washed** my car. Then I <sup>3</sup> **had** / **did** a bath. I also went to the park and <sup>4</sup> **fed** / **cooked** the ducks. After that, I went home and <sup>5</sup> **did** / **had** my homework.

### body parts

- 11 Find six parts of the body in the word snake.

efacejseyepafootnwowtoothwlnosepolegapo

### common verbs (2)

- 12 Complete the text with the verbs in the box.

change plan relax stay travel try walk want

Do you <sup>1</sup> ..... a break from everyday life or to <sup>2</sup> ..... your usual routine? <sup>3</sup> ..... to the Pyrenees and <sup>4</sup> ..... in our beautiful house in Cauterets – a quiet village next to Lac de Gaube. You can <sup>5</sup> ..... in the mountains, swim in the lake, or just <sup>6</sup> ..... and do nothing. <sup>7</sup> ..... a visit to nearby villages and <sup>8</sup> ..... food in local restaurants.

### transport

- 13 A Complete the transport words.

- |                     |                      |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1 m...t...rb...k... | 4 p...n...           |
| 2 t...a...          | 5 u...d...r...ou...d |
| 3 b...k...          | 6 b...t...           |

- B Choose the correct alternative.

- A: How do you usually travel to work?  
B: I can't drive so I usually ride my <sup>1</sup> **car** / **bike** or walk. Sometimes I take the <sup>2</sup> **bus** / **motorbike**.  
A: I don't live near my office. I get a <sup>3</sup> **plane** / **bus** to the station then I take the <sup>4</sup> **train** / **car** to my office. I buy a monthly <sup>5</sup> **single** / **pass** because I travel every day.

## How to ...

- 14 Complete the conversations with the words in the box.

can course far help hurt matter  
near next single well wrong

#### ... make requests and offers

- A: Can you <sup>1</sup> ..... me, please?  
B: Yes, of <sup>2</sup> .....  
A: I don't understand this question.  
B: <sup>3</sup> ..... I see?

#### ... ask where a place is

- A: Is there a supermarket <sup>4</sup> ..... here?  
B: Yes, there is.  
A: How <sup>5</sup> ..... is it?  
B: It's about ten minutes from here.

#### ... say you're not well

- A: What's the <sup>6</sup> .....?  
B: I don't feel <sup>7</sup> .....  
A: What's <sup>8</sup> .....?  
B: I've got a headache and my eyes <sup>9</sup> .....

#### ... buy a travel ticket

- A: Can I have a ticket to Bristol, please?  
B: <sup>10</sup> ..... or return?  
A: Return please. What time's the <sup>11</sup> ..... train?  
B: It leaves at 8.40.

- 15 Choose the correct alternative to complete the text.

My holiday was amazing! I <sup>1</sup> **travelled** / **travel** to Brazil with my sister. First, we took the train to the airport then we travelled by <sup>2</sup> **plane** / **tram** to Rio de Janeiro. Our aunt lives there, and we <sup>3</sup> **visited** / **stayed** with <sup>4</sup> **him** / **her** for a week. She lives in a beautiful <sup>5</sup> **apartment** / **living room** near the sea and we <sup>6</sup> **relaxed** / **walked** to the beach every day. The weather <sup>7</sup> **was** / **were** great.

<sup>8</sup> **It was** / **There was** a great restaurant <sup>9</sup> **opposite** / **between** my aunt's house and we <sup>10</sup> **tried** / **cooked** lots of Brazilian food. My favourite was the steak – I loved <sup>11</sup> **it** / **them**, but it was <sup>12</sup> **expensive** / **cheap**.



## GRAMMAR

**be: I, you****1 Complete the conversation with the missing words.**

A: Hello, <sup>1</sup>..... Anouk. Nice to meet you.

B: Hi Anouk, <sup>2</sup>..... Emre. Nice to meet you too.  
Where <sup>3</sup>..... you from?

A: <sup>4</sup>..... from Montpellier in France. <sup>5</sup>..... are you from?

B: <sup>6</sup>..... from Turkey.

A: Are <sup>7</sup>..... from Istanbul?

B: No, I'm <sup>8</sup>..... I'm from Gaziantep in the east of Turkey.

**singular and plural nouns; a, an; have, has****2A Complete the blog with a or an.****What's in my bag?**

I have <sup>1</sup>..... very big **bag**! I have lots of things in it. I have <sup>2</sup>..... **book**, <sup>3</sup>..... **tablet**, <sup>4</sup>..... **camera** and <sup>5</sup>..... **umbrella**. I also have my lunch – <sup>6</sup>..... **sandwich**, <sup>7</sup>..... **apple** and <sup>8</sup>..... **bottle of water**.

**B Write the plurals of the words in bold in Ex 2A.**

- |         |         |
|---------|---------|
| 1 ..... | 5 ..... |
| 2 ..... | 6 ..... |
| 3 ..... | 7 ..... |
| 4 ..... | 8 ..... |

**3 Complete the sentences with have or has.**

- I ..... a sister and a brother.
- Jude ..... a new job.
- We ..... a big garden.
- They ..... three children.
- Our flat ..... a small kitchen.

**present simple: we, you, they + be****4 Choose the correct alternative.**

- Jasper and I are students. **We're / They're** at university in Manchester.
- Lecia and Thiago are friends. **They're / You're** from Brazil.
- Hello Lieke, hi Bas. **You're / They're** early for class today!
- A: Are you and Seb brothers?  
B: Yes, **we / they** are.
- Vicki and Aden are Australian. Are **they / we** from Melbourne?

**wh- questions and be****5 Complete the questions with What, When, How, Who or Where.**

- ..... is your phone number?
- ..... old is your brother?
- ..... are Dorota and Igor?
- ..... is Jane's birthday?
- ..... are your grandparents from?

**possessive 's****6 Use the word in brackets to change the underlined word.**

- His car is black. (Jaime) **Jaime's car is black.**
- His house is really big. (my father)
- Her job is very difficult. (my sister)
- Tunde is her son. (Chinara)
- That's her office. (my friend)
- Is that his bike? (Karl)
- Harry is his cat. (Jon)
- That isn't her bag. (Bo-Bae)

**likes, dislikes and opinions****7 Correct the mistakes. Two sentences are correct.**

- Merv ~~don't~~ **doesn't** like his job. **It's very difficult.**
- I really not dislike big cities. I like quiet places.
- Do you think my new jacket is nice?
- Kevin hates purple. It's his favourite colour.
- Ga Ram and I very like jazz music.
- Do you love our new teacher? I think he's good.
- We have three cats. We like a lot cats!
- Poppy likes her new flat very much.

**present simple: regular verbs he, she, it****8 Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.**

My sister <sup>1</sup>..... (work) in the centre of Warsaw. She always <sup>2</sup>..... (get up) very early. She <sup>3</sup>..... (travel) to work by train. It <sup>4</sup>..... (take) about an hour. She usually <sup>5</sup>..... (check) her emails on the train or <sup>6</sup>..... (listen) to music. She <sup>7</sup>..... (walk) from the station to her office and <sup>8</sup>..... (start) work at 9 a.m. She <sup>9</sup>..... (not have) lunch in a café – she usually <sup>10</sup>..... (have) a sandwich at her desk. After work, she <sup>11</sup>..... (go) home and <sup>12</sup>..... (make) dinner for her family. She goes to bed early – around 10 p.m. She sometimes <sup>13</sup>..... (watch) television in bed but she <sup>14</sup>..... (not look) at her phone at night.

**present simple: yes/no questions (he, she, it)****9 Complete the conversation with the correct form of do or is. Use contractions where possible.**

- A: <sup>1</sup>..... your flatmate from Lisbon?  
B: No, he <sup>2</sup>..... He's from Porto.  
A: <sup>3</sup>..... he like it here?  
B: Yes, he <sup>4</sup>..... He loves Lisbon!  
A: <sup>5</sup>..... he a student too?  
B: No, he <sup>6</sup>..... He's a teacher.  
A: <sup>7</sup>..... he work in a school?  
B: No, he <sup>8</sup>..... He works in the university.



## can for ability

10 Put the words in the correct order to make questions.

- 1 drive / Anthony / Can ?
- 2 Can / swim / Noor ?
- 3 you / the / Can / tango / dance ?
- 4 speak / your / children / Can / languages / two ?
- 5 Flora / bike / Can / a / ride ?

## ordinal numbers; dates

11 Complete the diary with numbers or ordinal numbers.

### March 12th

We moved to a new apartment today! There are  
<sup>1</sup> ..... (3) bedrooms, a living room, a kitchen and  
<sup>2</sup> ..... (2) bathrooms! It's on the <sup>3</sup> ..... (10)  
 floor but there is a lift. It's amazing!

### March 23rd

Today was a good day! It was Emil's <sup>4</sup> ..... (21)  
 birthday! We had a party in our apartment - there  
 were about <sup>5</sup> ..... (30) people there. We gave  
 Emil a big birthday cake with <sup>6</sup> ..... (21) candles  
 on it! He loved it!

## the

12 Correct the mistake in each sentence.

- 1 Sophy has ~~the~~ a daughter. Her name is Serena.
- 2 Ankara is a capital of Turkey.
- 3 What's a date today?
- 4 Casper isn't a dancer. He's the artist.
- 5 Our Chinese class is at 10 o'clock in a morning.
- 6 Johanna is from USA.

## imperatives

13 Complete the text messages with the positive or negative imperative form of the verbs in the box.

book forget take visit

←
📺 📞 ⋮

**Adele:** Hey Giorgia and Leo! Simon booked a weekend break for us in Rome next week!

**Giorgia:** Great! <sup>1</sup> ..... the Colosseum.

**Leo:** Hi Adele. <sup>2</sup> ..... tickets for the Colosseum before you arrive! It's very busy.

**Adele:** Thanks! Any 'don'ts'?

**Leo:** <sup>3</sup> ..... taxis - they're expensive. You can walk everywhere.

**Giorgia:** <sup>4</sup> ..... your camera!

## past simple: irregular verbs

14 Write the past simple of each verb.

- |              |               |
|--------------|---------------|
| 1 buy .....  | 6 see .....   |
| 2 do .....   | 7 take .....  |
| 3 have ..... | 8 know .....  |
| 4 make ..... | 9 sleep ..... |
| 5 go .....   | 10 get .....  |

## want, would like

15 Choose the correct alternatives.

### NEXT SUMMER

In the summer I <sup>1</sup> **'d like / want** to travel to the USA. I <sup>2</sup> **like / want** American music and films and I really <sup>3</sup> **want / like** to visit New York. I <sup>4</sup> **'d like / love** to stay in an apartment near Central Park and spend a week or two in the city. I <sup>5</sup> **love / 'd love** art and I <sup>6</sup> **'d like / wouldn't like** to visit the museums. I'd also <sup>7</sup> **like / dislike** to go shopping - New York has great shops!

What about you? What <sup>8</sup> **would you like / want to** do next summer?

16 Choose the correct word (a-c).

### An interview with Athena Marshall

This week we talk to Colombian artist, Athena Marshall, about her life and work.

<sup>1</sup> ..... did you start to paint?

I started when I <sup>2</sup> ..... a very young child - maybe two or three years old! My grandfather was an artist and he showed me how to draw and paint. After school, I studied art at university. I <sup>3</sup> ..... my husband there - he's an artist too and now he <sup>4</sup> ..... pictures for <sup>5</sup> ..... books.

<sup>6</sup> ..... do you usually paint?

I usually paint pictures of cities - I like big, busy cities <sup>7</sup> ..... My favourite place in the world is London - you <sup>8</sup> ..... visit really interesting places and the food is amazing! I always feel happy in London. I also love the mountains. We <sup>9</sup> ..... an apartment in a small town in the Alps and it's beautiful there.

What <sup>10</sup> ..... you like to do next?

My husband and I are both <sup>11</sup> ..... next year and we <sup>12</sup> ..... to travel around the world for a year!

- |                |            |               |
|----------------|------------|---------------|
| 1 a When       | b Who      | c What        |
| 2 a 'm         | b was      | c were        |
| 3 a meet       | b met      | c knew        |
| 4 a draw       | b drew     | c draws       |
| 5 a children's | b children | c childrens   |
| 6 a Why        | b How      | c What        |
| 7 a much       | b a lot    | c lot         |
| 8 a can't      | b don't    | c can         |
| 9 a has        | b have     | c are         |
| 10 a want      | b are      | c would       |
| 11 a fifty     | b fiftieth | c fifty-fifth |
| 12 a like      | b would    | c want        |

## VOCABULARY

### hello and goodbye

#### 1 Complete the words.

- 1 A: H\_\_\_\_\_ Phil!  
B: H\_\_\_\_\_ John!
- 2 A: G\_\_\_\_\_ a\_\_\_\_\_. I'm Ellie.  
B: H\_\_\_\_\_ Ellie. Nice to meet you.
- 3 A: B\_\_\_\_\_ Hana!  
B: S\_\_\_\_\_ y\_\_\_\_\_!
- 4 A: G\_\_\_\_\_ n\_\_\_\_\_. Luna.  
B: G\_\_\_\_\_ Kiko.

### jobs

#### 2 Find eight jobs in the word snake.

r p a r t i s t s i n g e r l k w a i t e r d n u r s e p o t a x i d r i v e r k a t e a c h e r o f f i c e w o r k e r s a s h o p a s s i s t a n t

### family and people

#### 3 Look at the photo and complete the family words.



This is a picture of my family. My <sup>1</sup>p\_\_\_\_\_ are on the left. My <sup>2</sup>f\_\_\_\_\_ is called Giuseppe. He's from Italy. My <sup>3</sup>m\_\_\_\_\_ is from Greece. She's called Alexia. I'm next to my mother in the photo. I have a <sup>4</sup>b\_\_\_\_\_, Jaco – he's next to me. I don't have any <sup>5</sup>s\_\_\_\_\_. Jaco's <sup>6</sup>w\_\_\_\_\_ is in the photo next to him. She's called Shanaya. My <sup>7</sup>h\_\_\_\_\_ is on the right of the photo with our <sup>8</sup>c\_\_\_\_\_. Our <sup>9</sup>d\_\_\_\_\_ is called Rosa. She's eight. Our <sup>10</sup>s\_\_\_\_\_ is Danny. He's five.

### feelings

#### 4 Complete the table with the words in the the box.

fine good great not very well OK very well

not very good	not bad	well	really good	6 _____
1 _____	2 _____	3 _____	5 _____	
		4 _____		

### things

#### 5 Choose the correct alternative.

- 1 I love my new **watch** / **camera**. It's great for black and white photos.
- 2 My favourite thing is my **bike** / **coffee machine**. I have three espressos every morning.
- 3 Prayaag can play the **guitar** / **ring**.
- 4 Johnny can't drive so he cycles everywhere. He has a light blue **bike** / **car**.
- 5 My **watch** / **car** is over 150 years old. It was my grandfather's.

### colours

#### 6 Put the letters in the correct order to make words for colours.

- 1 Bananas are \_\_\_\_\_. (ellwoy)
- 2 The sky is \_\_\_\_\_. (uelb)
- 3 Snow is \_\_\_\_\_. (etiwh)
- 4 Grass is \_\_\_\_\_. (energ)
- 5 My shirt is \_\_\_\_\_. (erd)

### desk objects

#### 7 Look at the photo and complete the words.



- 1 p \_ n \_ i \_
- 2 n \_ t \_ o \_ k \_
- 3 h \_ a \_ \_ \_ \_ e \_
- 4 k \_ y \_ o \_ \_ d \_
- 5 m \_ u \_ \_ \_
- 6 s \_ i \_ \_ o \_ s
- 7 p \_ a \_ \_ \_
- 8 p \_ \_ \_ \_
- 9 c \_ \_ \_ \_ f c \_ \_ \_ f \_ e
- 10 p \_ o \_ \_ o

### food and drink

#### 8 Complete the food and drink words.

For breakfast I usually have a big bowl of <sup>1</sup>c\_\_\_\_\_ with milk and some fruit – yesterday I had an <sup>2</sup>o\_\_\_\_\_. I often have a glass of <sup>3</sup>f\_\_\_\_\_.

For lunch I always have an <sup>4</sup>e\_\_\_\_\_ and <sup>5</sup>t\_\_\_\_\_. <sup>6</sup>s\_\_\_\_\_. It's my favourite! Then I usually have a <sup>7</sup>b\_\_\_\_\_ or an <sup>8</sup>a\_\_\_\_\_.

### café words

#### 9 Complete the café menu.

##### Hot drinks

- <sup>1</sup>T\_\_\_\_\_
- Coffee
- <sup>2</sup>E\_\_\_\_\_
- <sup>3</sup>A\_\_\_\_\_

##### Cold drinks

- <sup>4</sup>M\_\_\_\_\_ w\_\_\_\_\_
- <sup>5</sup>F\_\_\_\_\_
- apple or orange



## verbs of ability

**10** Complete the conversations with the verbs in the box.

paint remember sing swim throw

- 1 A: Can you .....?  
B: Yes, I can. I love the water!
- 2 A: What does Peter usually .....?  
B: Pictures of the sea and the mountains.
- 3 A: Can you play cricket?  
B: I can ..... the ball but I can't catch it.
- 4 A: Can you ..... songs from your country?  
B: No, I can't. I can't remember any.
- 5 A: When is Aurelie's birthday?  
B: I don't know. I can't .....

## places in town

**11** Complete the places in a town with vowels (a, e, i, o, u).

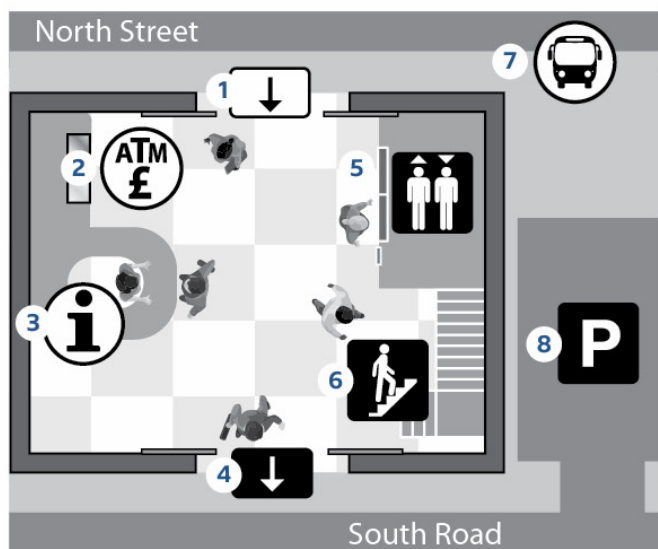
- |                          |                           |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 p _ st _ ff _ c _      | 8 s _ p _ rm _ rk _ t _   |
| 2 sh _ pp _ ng c _ ntr _ | 9 m _ s _ m _             |
| 3 tr _ n st _ t _ n _    | 10 c _ n _ m _            |
| 4 l _ br _ ry _          | 11 h _ t _ l _            |
| 5 h _ sp _ t _ l _       | 12 sc _ _ l _             |
| 6 _ _ rp _ rt _          | 13 sp _ rts c _ ntr _     |
| 7 b _ s st _ t _ n _     | 14 sw _ mm _ ng p _ _ l _ |

## places in town (2)

**12** Match the words in the box with the places on the map (1-8). There are two extra words.

bus stop cash machine entrance  
exit hospital information desk  
lift parking area school stairs

- |         |         |
|---------|---------|
| 1 ..... | 5 ..... |
| 2 ..... | 6 ..... |
| 3 ..... | 7 ..... |
| 4 ..... | 8 ..... |



## free time activities

**13** Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in the box.

do go have meet see

I don't usually do much at the weekends, but last weekend I did lots! On Saturday I <sup>1</sup> ..... some friends in the city and we <sup>2</sup> ..... lunch in a restaurant. Then we went to the cinema and <sup>3</sup> ..... a film. On Sunday morning I <sup>4</sup> ..... to the park and with my sister and we <sup>5</sup> ..... some exercise.

## How to ...

**14A** Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1 size / you / are / What ?
- 2 sparkling / Can / have / water / I / a / please ?
- 3 spell / How / surname / do / your / you ?
- 4 well / I / feel / don't .
- 5 two / next / is / The / at / o'clock / train .
- 6 opposite / supermarket / the / It's .

**B** Match the sentences (1-8) in Ex 14A with their function (a-h).

- |                        |                        |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| a say you're not well  | d shop for clothes     |
| b buy a travel ticket  | e ask simple questions |
| c ask where a place is | f order in a café      |

**15** Choose the correct option (a-c) to complete the text.

I'm Beth. I'm 26 and I'm a <sup>1</sup> ..... in a hospital. I like my job, but I'm usually tired after work.

In my free time, I swim, <sup>2</sup> ..... sport and go to dance classes. Next year, I'd like to go to Cali in Colombia and <sup>3</sup> ..... a week at a salsa school there.

I live with my <sup>4</sup> ....., Carolina. She works at the hospital too. She's a student doctor. Carolina loves art and she can <sup>5</sup> ..... beautiful pictures. She also takes great photos. She's got a new <sup>6</sup> ..... and she uses it a lot.

On Saturday evenings, we often <sup>7</sup> ..... a film at the cinema, then go to a restaurant. Our favourite is an Indian restaurant. I don't eat <sup>8</sup> ..... and they have lots of good vegetable dishes.

- |                      |                  |           |
|----------------------|------------------|-----------|
| 1 a digital designer | b nurse          | c teacher |
| 2 a do               | b see            | c have    |
| 3 a meet             | b see            | c spend   |
| 4 a mother           | b sister         | c brother |
| 5 a paint            | b sing           | c catch   |
| 6 a ring             | b coffee machine | c camera  |
| 7 a see              | b look           | c meet    |
| 8 a vegetables       | b fruit          | c meat    |



## LEAD-IN

### Audio L.01

- 1 seven, eight
- 2 zero, one
- 3 three, four
- 4 eight, nine
- 5 one, two
- 6 four, five
- 7 six, seven
- 8 five, six

### Audio L.02

- 1  
Teacher: The activity is on page four.  
Antoni: Can you repeat that, please?  
Teacher: Yes. It's on page four.  
Antoni: I don't understand.  
Teacher: Page four in the book. One, two, three, four ...  
Antoni: Ah, yes! I understand.
- 2  
Marta: Edu, what's *libro* in English?  
Edu: I don't know.  
Marta: Simon, what's *libro* in English?  
Simon: It's 'book'.  
Marta: Ah, thank you!

## UNIT 1

### Audio 1.01

- 1 A: Good afternoon. I'm Ben.  
B: Hello Ben. I'm Edward.
- 2 A: Bye Sally!  
B: See you!
- 3 A: Hi, I'm Adam.  
B: Hey, Adam. I'm Jodie. Nice to meet you.
- 4 A: Good night Yasmin!  
B: Bye Laura!

### Audio 1.02

- A: Hello, I'm Mina. Nice to meet you.  
B: Hi Mina. I'm Andressa. Nice to meet you, too. Where are you from?  
A: I'm from Yokohama in Japan. Are you Portuguese?  
B: No, I'm not. I'm Brazilian.  
A: Wow! Are you from Rio de Janeiro?  
B: Yes, I am.

### Audio 1.03

- 1 A: Hello, I'm Laura. Nice to meet you!  
B: Hi! I'm Henri. Nice to meet you, too!
- 2 A: Good afternoon. I'm Antonio.  
B: Hello. I'm Ali.
- 3 A: Good afternoon. I'm Julia.  
B: Hello. I'm Joseph.
- 4 A: Hi, I'm Suzie.  
B: Hey Suzie! I'm Ben!

### Audio 1.04

- H: Hello. I'm Hugo.  
E: Hi Hugo. I'm Emi. Nice to meet you.  
H: Nice to meet you, too. Are you a student here?  
E: Yes, I am. Are you a student, too?  
H: Yes, I am. I'm French.  
E: Ah, you're from France! Are you from Paris?  
H: No, I'm not. I'm from Marseilles. Where are you from, Emi?  
E: I'm from Osaka in Japan.  
J: Hello everyone! I'm Jess. I'm a teacher here at London Central University. I'm British, but I'm not from London. I'm from Cardiff. It's nice to meet you all.

### Audio 1.05

- |                                    |                                      |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1 a <u>b</u> usinesswoman          | 6 an <u>o</u> ffice <u>w</u> orker   |
| 2 an <u>a</u> ctor                 | 7 a <u>n</u> urse                    |
| 3 a <u>p</u> olice <u>o</u> fficer | 8 a <u>s</u> hop <u>a</u> ssistant   |
| 4 a <u>s</u> inger                 | 9 a <u>d</u> igital <u>d</u> esigner |
| 5 a <u>t</u> axi <u>d</u> river    | 10 a <u>f</u> ootball <u>p</u> layer |

### Audio 1.06

- |           |           |
|-----------|-----------|
| 1 H K S A | 4 B G R T |
| 2 N Z U F | 5 Y V P C |
| 3 W O U Q | 6 L F Z E |

### Audio 1.07

- |                     |                 |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| 1 D-O-C-T-O-R       | 5 T-E-A-C-H-E-R |
| 2 P-A-R-K           | 6 P-H-O-T-O     |
| 3 A-R-G-E-N-T-I-N-A | 7 A-R-T-I-S-T   |
| 4 B-O-O-K           | 8 V-I-E-T-N-A-M |

### Audio 1.08

- Receptionist: Hello. Can I help you?  
Isabel: Hello. I'm a new student here.  
Receptionist: OK. What's your name?  
Isabel: It's Isabel Fernandez.  
Receptionist: Isabel Hernandez?  
Isabel: No, Fernandez.  
Receptionist: Oh, sorry. How do you spell that?  
Isabel: F-E-R-N-A-N-D-E-Z.  
Receptionist: F-E-R-N-A-N-D-E-Z?  
Isabel: Yes, that's right.  
Receptionist: And your first name ... I-S-A-B-E-L-L?  
Isabel: No, that's not right. It's I-S-A-B-E-L.  
Receptionist: OK, perfect. And what's your nationality Isabel?  
Isabel: I'm Spanish.  
Receptionist: OK. And what's your home address?  
Isabel: It's 5 Lennox Street, Bristol.  
Receptionist: How do you spell the street name?  
Isabel: L-E-N-N-O-X.  
Receptionist: Great, thank you. And what's your phone number?  
Isabel: It's 713 9205.  
Receptionist: Sorry, can you repeat that please?  
Isabel: 713 9205.  
Receptionist: Thank you. OK Isabel, here's your student card.  
Isabel: Thank you very much.

### Audio 1.09

- Receptionist: Hello. Can I help you?  
Maika: Hello. I'm a new student here.  
Receptionist: OK. What's your surname?  
Maika: It's Tanaka.  
Receptionist: How do you spell your surname?

Maika: T-A-N-A-K-A.  
 Receptionist: T-A-N-A-K-A?  
 Maika: Yes, that's right.  
 Receptionist: And what's your first name?  
 Maika: It's Maika.  
 Receptionist: Is that ... M-A-E-K-A?  
 Maika: No, that's not right. It's M-A-I-K-A.  
 Receptionist: OK, perfect. And what's your address  
 Maika?  
 Maika: It's 2 Park Street.  
 Receptionist: How do you spell the street name?  
 Maika: P-A-R-K.  
 Receptionist: Great, thank you. And what's your phone  
 number?  
 Maika: It's 629 3301.  
 Receptionist: Sorry, can you repeat that please?  
 Maika: 629 3301.  
 Receptionist: Thank you. OK Maika, here's your student  
 card.  
 Maika: Thank you very much.

## Audio 1.10 and 1.11

Receptionist: Hello, can I help you?  
 Elizabeth: Yes. I'm here for the conference.  
 Receptionist: Just a moment. What's your name?  
 Elizabeth: It's Elizabeth Browne.  
 Receptionist: How do you spell your surname?  
 Elizabeth: It's B-R-O-W-N-E.  
 Receptionist: Thank you. And your first name ...  
 E-L-I-S-A-B-E-T-H?  
 Elizabeth: No, that's wrong. It's E-L-I-Z-A-B-E-T-H.  
 Receptionist: Sorry, E-L-I-Z-A-B-E-T-H?  
 Elizabeth: Yes, that's right.  
 Receptionist: Perfect. Here's your name card. The  
 conference is in room seven.  
 Elizabeth: Thank you.  
 Receptionist: No problem.

## Audio 1.12

Presenter: Hello and welcome to the 'My Top Three  
 Things' podcast. With me today are Ralph and  
 Yolanda. Ralph, tell us about yourself.  
 Ralph: Hi, I'm Ralph. I'm from Sheffield in the UK, but  
 now I'm in London. I'm a police officer.  
 Presenter: Thanks, Ralph. Yolanda, what about you?  
 Yolanda: Hi, I'm Yolanda and I'm from Manaus in Brazil,  
 but now I'm in Washington, in the USA. I'm a  
 digital designer in an American company.  
 Presenter: Thanks, Yolanda. OK, Ralph, what are your top  
 three things?  
 Ralph: It's difficult, but number three is my laptop.  
 Number two is my wallet. It has money, two  
 credit cards and photos of my family in it.  
 Number one is my mobile phone – I always  
 have my phone!  
 Presenter: Great, thanks Ralph. Yolanda, tell us about  
 your top three things.  
 Yolanda: OK. Number three is a notebook – I always  
 have a notebook in my bag. Number two is my  
 mobile phone – or mobile phones – I have two.  
 But number one ... is my bag! It's from Italy  
 and it's beautiful.  
 Presenter: Nice! Thanks, Yolanda. Now ...

## UNIT 2

### Audio 2.01

- 1 twelve
- 2 seventy-three
- 3 eighty-nine
- 4 nineteen
- 5 thirty
- 6 ninety-nine
- 7 thirteen
- 8 twenty-two
- 9 forty-six
- 10 sixty

### Audio 2.02

- 1 thirteen
- 2 eighty
- 3 twenty
- 4 sixteen
- 5 sixty
- 6 eighteen
- 7 fifteen
- 8 forty

### Audio 2.03

A: Who are they?  
 B: They're my friends, Jaime and Beatriz.  
 A: Where are they from?  
 B: They're from Mexico.  
 A: Are they from Mexico City?  
 B: No, they're not. They're from Mérida.  
 A: Are they students?  
 B: Yes, they are.

### Audio 2.04

A: Who are they?  
 B: They're my parents, Maria and Richard.  
 A: Where are they?  
 B: They're at our house in France. My mother is Colombian.  
 She's from Cali.  
 A: Is your father Colombian, too?  
 B: No, he's American. He's from Los Angeles.  
 A: And who are they?  
 B: That's my sister Helen and her husband Kerem. He's  
 Turkish.  
 A: Are they in Turkey now?  
 B: Yes. They're in Izmir. Their children are Isabel and Zeki.  
 They're five and three.

### Audio 2.05

- 1 sister
- 2 brother
- 3 husband
- 4 parents
- 5 children
- 6 people
- 7 women
- 8 daughter

## Audio 2.06

Matt: Hi Gemma, how are you?  
 Gemma: Oh, hi Matt. I'm fine thanks, you?  
 Matt: Yeah, I'm OK ... oh look!  
 Gemma: Let's see ... ah, what a great photo! Is that your family?  
 Matt: Yeah, it's my wife Giulia and our daughters. It's from the weekend.  
 Gemma: It's lovely. Where are they?  
 Matt: They're in our garden.  
 Gemma: It's beautiful!  
 Matt: Thanks. Olivia is 19 and Sofia is 21. I have a son too, but he isn't in the photo. His name's Leo.  
 Gemma: How old is he?  
 Matt: He's erm ... 25!  
 Gemma: What do they do?  
 Matt: The girls are students. Sofia is in Toronto and Olivia is Montreal, but they're here in Vancouver now.  
 Gemma: And what about Leo? Is he a student, too?  
 Matt: No, he's an English teacher. He's in Italy now.  
 Gemma: Oh wow! Your wife's from Italy, isn't she?  
 Matt: Yes, she is. She's from Rome. And she's a teacher, too! How about your family? How old are your children now?

## Audio 2.07

**1**  
 Dave: Hi John, how are you?  
 John: Hi, Dave. Not bad, thanks. How are you?  
 Dave: I'm really good, thanks.  
**2**  
 Sara: Hey Beth, how are you?  
 Beth: I'm fine, thanks. How are you, Sara?  
 Sara: I'm not very well.  
**3**  
 Iulia: Hello Chris, how are you?  
 Chris: Hi Iulia. I'm very well. How are you?  
 Iulia: I'm great!  
**4**  
 Eliana: Hey Andrea, how are you?  
 Andrea: I'm OK, thanks. You?  
 Eliana: I'm not very good.  
**5**  
 Richard: Hi Emil!  
 Emil: Hi Richard, how are you?  
 Richard: I'm well, thanks, Emil. How are you?  
 Emil: Good, thanks.

## Audio 2.08

Joe: Hi Kate. How are you?  
 Kate: Not bad, thanks, Joe. Coffee?  
 Joe: Oh yes, please. White please, erm, one sugar. Great. Thanks Kate.  
 Kate: You're welcome. How are things?  
 Joe: Good, thanks. How's work?  
 Kate: Not very good. I'm really tired today. How's your new job?  
 Joe: It's great! The people in the office are really friendly.  
 Kate: Good. And how are your family?  
 Joe: They're really good, thanks. How's your son?  
 Kate: He's great, thanks. His new school is really good, and the teachers are great. He's really happy there.  
 Joe: That's good. Oh, look at the time! Thanks for the coffee!  
 Kate: No problem. See you later!  
 Joe: See you!

## Audio 2.09

**1** How is your new car?  
**2** I'm very happy with it.  
**3** Not bad, but I'm very tired.  
**4** My father isn't very well.

## Audio 2.10

**1** How are your children?  
**2** It's a beautiful day.  
**3** No problem.  
**4** Thanks for the chat.  
**5** How's your new job?  
**6** See you later.

## Audio 2.11 and 2.12

A: Hi Sarah! Good to see you!  
 B: Hello, how are things?  
 A: Not bad, thanks. How are you?  
 B: I'm really good. How's your new apartment?  
 A: It's great! We're really happy with it.  
 B: Good. Oh, look at the time! Thanks for the chat!  
 A: See you later.  
 B: Bye.

## UNIT 3

### Audio 3.01

<b>1</b> My sister's car.	<b>5</b> My daughter's bike.
<b>2</b> Ilya's guitar.	<b>6</b> Eloise's ring.
<b>3</b> Beth's camera.	<b>7</b> Griff's apartment.
<b>4</b> Max's watch.	<b>8</b> Adesh's bed.

### Audio 3.02

My desk is small, but I have lots of things on it. I have a computer, a keyboard, and a mouse. I have two notebooks and a cup with pens in it. I don't any have pencils. I have some headphones, a bottle of water and a photo of my children. What else? Well, I have my phone and a book.

### Audio 3.03

**1** A: Do you have any scissors?  
 B: No, I don't.  
**2** A: Do you have a bottle of water?  
 B: Yes, I do.  
**3** A: Do they have a car?  
 B: Yes, they do.  
**4** A: Do we have any pencils?  
 B: No, we don't.

### Audio 3.04

Jamie: Hello and welcome to *Inside New York*. I'm Jamie and today I'm in Times Square to ask people about what they have in their bags. Hi! I'm Jamie. I have a podcast for young people in New York. Can I ask you some questions?  
 Luca: Erm, OK.  
 Mia: Yeah, sure.  
 Jamie: Great! What's your name?  
 Luca: It's Luca.  
 Jamie: Do you have a job?  
 Karim: No, I don't. I'm a student.  
 Jamie: OK. So, what's in your bag today?  
 Luca: Erm ... I have my phone, some headphones, a bottle of water, a book, ... and my glasses.  
 Jamie: Do you have a notebook?



Luca: No, I don't ... and I don't have any pens or pencils, but I have a tablet. My tablet's new.  
 Jamie: OK, great! And, what's your name?  
 Mia: I'm Mia.  
 Jamie: Do you have a job, Mia?  
 Mia: Yes, I do. I'm a writer. I have a blog.  
 Jamie: Wow! That's great! And, what's in your bag?  
 Mia: Oh, lots of things! It's my work bag and it's very big! Let's see, erm ... I have my phone, of course, my tablet, two notebooks – a red one and a blue one, some pencils and a pen. The pen's green. It's my favourite colour. I also have some sticky notes in different colours and a bottle of water.  
 Jamie: Wow! Lots of things! Thanks very much, Mia.

## Audio 3.05

Maja: Hey Enzo, look at these jeans.  
 Enzo: The light blue or black?  
 Maja: The light blue ... I have black jeans and dark blue jeans.  
 Enzo: They're nice. How much are they?  
 Maj: I don't know. Excuse me!  
 Shop assistant: Hello. Can I help you?  
 Maja: Yes, please. How much are the jeans?  
 Shop assistant: They're £50.  
 Maja: OK. And how much is this yellow top?  
 Shop assistant: It's £30.  
 Maja: Can I try them on?  
 Shop assistant: Yes, of course.  
 Maja: Excuse me. Where are the changing rooms?  
 Shop assistant: Over there.  
 Maja: Thanks  
 Maja: What do you think?  
 Enzo: I like your jeans.  
 Maja: Yeah, the jeans are perfect, but the top is small. Excuse me!  
 Shop assistant: Yes?  
 Maja: Do you have this in a size 12?  
 Shop assistant: No, I don't, sorry. But I have green or purple tops in a size 12.  
 Maja: Hmm. No thanks. I don't like purple or green. Do you like anything Enzo?  
 Enzo: Yes, I like this jacket. Excuse me. How much is this jacket?  
 Shop assistant: It's £75. We have different colours.  
 Enzo: Do you have red?  
 Shop assistant: Yes, I do. What size are you?  
 Enzo: Large ... thanks. Can I try it on?  
 Shop assistant: Yes, of course.  
 Maja: The jacket is great Enzo! Red's a good colour for you.  
 Enzo: Yeah, I love it!

## Audio 3.06

- 1 How much is this jumper?
- 2 Can I try these shoes on?
- 3 The changing rooms are over there.
- 4 Do you have a large size?

## Audio 3.07

- 1 Excuse me.
- 2 How much are the trousers?
- 3 Where are the changing rooms?
- 4 What size are you?
- 5 They're \$25.
- 6 Can I try it on?

## Audio 3.08 and 3.09

A: Excuse me.  
 B: Yes? Can I help you?  
 A: I like this jumper. How much is it?  
 B: It's £25.  
 A: Thank you. Can I try it on?  
 B: Yes, of course. What size are you?  
 A: I'm a medium.  
 B: Here you are.  
 A: Great. Where are the changing rooms?  
 B: They're over there.  
 A: Thank you.

## Audio 3.10

- 1 A: Do you like pizza?  
 B: I love pizza! It's my favourite food. What about you?  
 A: I hate pizza. I never eat it. I really like steak. Do you like steak?  
 B: No, I don't.
- 2 A: Hi Carl, do you like my new jumper?  
 B: Yes, I do. I think it's beautiful. Is it new?  
 A: Yes, it's from the new clothes shop in town. I really like the colour.

## Audio 3.11

Presenter: Hello and welcome to the *City Life* podcast. Today is all about shops and I have Eliza, Yuki and Toto with me. Eliza, what's your favourite shop?  
 Eliza: Bookshops. I love books and I don't buy them online. I have a big bookshop near my house in Gdansk. It's great – the shop assistants are really friendly, and they have hundreds of interesting books ... and a really good café. I think it's my favourite place.  
 Presenter: Nice! Toto, do you like bookshops?  
 Toto: No, I don't. I don't really like books. I like video games. My favourite shop is a computer shop in my town. It's great – it has computers, games, tablets, phones ... I buy lots of different things there.  
 Presenter: Thanks Toto! Yuki, what about you?  
 Yuki: My favourite shops are clothes shops. I love beautiful, old clothes. My city has lots of clothes shops, but my favourite is a small shop called *Market*. This jacket is from there.  
 Presenter: It's cool! I love the dark green colour. So, what shops do you not like? Eliza?  
 Eliza: Umm ... I don't like meat, so I hate butchers' shops. And I don't really like clothes shops.  
 Presenter: OK. Toto, what about you?  
 Toto: I don't like bookshops or clothes shops, and I hate shoe shops!  
 Presenter: Yuki, what about you?  
 Yuki: I love shoe shops! Erm, I don't really like supermarkets or sports shops, but I don't hate any shops.  
 Presenter: Thanks. Now, Eliza, what do you buy online ...

## UNIT 4

### Audio 4.01

For breakfast, I usually have rice with eggs and vegetables, often carrots and mushrooms. Sometimes I have a cheese sandwich from a café. I don't often eat fruit for breakfast, but sometimes I eat an apple or a banana. I drink water and I always have a cup of coffee.

### Audio 4.02

apple  
banana  
beef  
bread  
cheese  
chicken  
mushroom  
orange  
pasta  
potato  
sandwich  
tomato

### Audio 4.03

Interviewer: Welcome to *Food and Friends*. Today, we're with Adriana Carvalho, a surfer from Brazil to ask: What do you usually eat? Nice to meet you, Adriana. So, you're a professional surfer ...?

Adriana: Yes, that's right. Surfing is my job.

Interviewer: And where are you from?

Adriana: I'm from Bahia, in Brazil.

Interviewer: Is that by the sea?

Adriana: Yes. I love the sea. It's my favourite thing!

Interviewer: So, do you eat a lot of fish?

Adriana: Umm, yes, I do ... but I eat lots of other things, too.

Interviewer: OK. What do you eat in a typical day?

Adriana: For breakfast I usually have cereal with milk, and I always have some fruit ... usually a banana and an apple or orange. On Saturdays, I always have Brazilian cheese bread. It's one of my favourite foods. I always have one or two big cups of coffee in the morning, but I never have tea. I don't like tea.

Interviewer: And what about lunch?

Adriana: Sometimes I have a sandwich, but I usually have pasta with cheese and some vegetables, often tomatoes or mushrooms. I usually drink water, but sometimes I have fruit juice. I really like apple juice.

Interviewer: And what do you have for dinner?

Adriana: I always have dinner at home with my family. We have rice or potatoes with vegetables and fish or meat. Usually we have chicken, but I love steak, too! But, my favourite food is Moqueca ... it's Brazilian fish and tomatoes.

Interviewer: Mmm. Sounds great! Thanks Adriana ...

### Audio 4.04

I get up at 7 every day. I usually have cereal and fruit for breakfast and a cup of coffee. I leave home at 8.30 and go to work. I start work at 9 a.m. I finish work at 5.30. I get home at 6 p.m. and make dinner for my family. After dinner we often watch TV. I go to bed at 11 p.m.

### Audio 4.05

- |           |            |
|-----------|------------|
| 1 goes    | 6 eats     |
| 2 leaves  | 7 has      |
| 3 makes   | 8 gets     |
| 4 watches | 9 finishes |
| 5 does    | 10 studies |

### Audio 4.06

Barista: Can I help you?

Customer: Yes, can we have two cheese and tomato sandwiches, please?

Barista: White or brown bread?

Customer: Brown, please.

Barista: Anything else?

Customer: Yes. Can we have two coffees – an espresso and an Americano, please?

Barista: Anything else?

Customer: How much are the pastries?

Barista: Let me check ... they're £2.20.

Customer: Can we have two, please?

Barista: Here you go.

Customer: Thanks. And can I have a mineral water please?

Barista: Still or sparkling?

Customer: Sparkling, please.

Barista: Anything else?

Customer: Umm. No, thanks. How much is that?

Barista: It's £19.50.

Customer: Here you go. Thanks.

Barista: Thank you.

Customer: Oh, can I have some sugar, please?

Barista: It's over there – with the knives and forks.

Customer: Great. Bye.

### Audio 4.07

- 1 Tea or coffee?
- 2 Still or sparkling?
- 3 Espresso or latte?
- 4 Brown or white?
- 5 Apple or orange?
- 6 Small or large?

### Audio 4.08

- 1 Tea or coffee?
- 2 Still or sparkling?
- 3 Brown or white?

### Audio 4.09 and 4.10

A: Can I help you?

B: Yes, what are the breakfast specials?

A: We have pastries or sandwiches with tea or coffee.

B: Thank you. Can I have a pastry, please?

A: Fruit or chocolate?

B: Fruit, please.

A: Tea or coffee?

B: Coffee please.

A: With milk and sugar?

B: Just milk, thank you.

A: Anything else?

B: Yes, can I have a mineral water, please?

A: Still or sparkling?

B: Still, please. How much is that?

A: Just a moment. Let me check. That's £8.

B: Thanks.

## UNIT 5

### Audio 5.01

- 1 I really like him.
- 2 She never helps us.
- 3 Please call her tomorrow.
- 4 They don't like it.
- 5 He always thanks us.
- 6 She usually gets him coffee.

### Audio 5.02

- 1 Can Joshua play tennis?
- 2 Ana can type very well.
- 3 Danny can't remember people's names.
- 4 Yes, I can.
- 5 Can you cook Italian food?
- 6 Sylvie can speak three languages.

### Audio 5.03

Martin: Hey Pete, what's that?  
 Pete: It's a quiz. Look ...  
 Martin: What can you do? What do your skills say about you? ... Cool. Let's do it!  
 Pete: OK, you first, Martin.  
 Martin: Sure.  
 Pete: Question 1 ... can you play the piano or the guitar?  
 Martin: I can play the piano, but I can't play the guitar.  
 Pete: OK. Can you dance salsa?  
 Martin: No, I can't. But I can dance the tango.  
 Pete: Can you?! Wow. OK, next question ... can you sing a song in English?  
 Martin: Yes, I can. I love American music.  
 Pete: OK, erm, can you paint?  
 Martin: Paint a picture? No, I can't.  
 Pete: The next question is: can you read a map?  
 Martin: Yes, I can. That's easy!  
 Pete: And can you remember important dates?  
 Martin: Hmm. No, I can't. I always forget birthdays.  
 Pete: Can you say 'hello' in five languages?  
 Martin: Yes, I can. I can say 'hello' in German, Polish, English, Japanese and Russian.  
 Pete: Wow! I can't do that! Can you use a computer?  
 Martin: Yes, of course! I use one every day for work.  
 Pete: And can you type with your eyes closed?  
 Martin: Yes, I can but not very well!  
 Pete: Can you run or swim five kilometres?  
 Martin: I can run five kilometres, but I can't swim.  
 Pete: OK, last question. Can you play football?  
 Martin: Yes, I can, but I'm not very good.  
 Pete: OK. No more questions. So, let's see ... what does it say about your personality?

### Audio 5.04

Emily: Hello?  
 Dave: Hey Emily, it's Dave. Are you in the café now?  
 Emily: Yes, I am. It's busy! Where are you?  
 Dave: I'm at my desk. I can't take a lunch break today.  
 Emily: Can I get you something?  
 Dave: Yes please! Could you get me a coffee?  
 Emily: Sure. An Americano?  
 Dave: A latte, please. A big one!  
 Emily: No problem. Anything else?  
 Dave: Umm ... yes. Do they have any pasta?  
 Emily: Erm ... no, not today. They have sandwiches – cheese, egg or chicken.

Dave: OK. Could I have a chicken sandwich, please?  
 Emily: Sure. A latte and a chicken sandwich.  
 Dave: Thanks ... oh, Emily!  
 Emily: Yes?  
 Dave: Could you ask for brown bread please?  
 Emily: No problem. Anything else, Dave?  
 Dave: Erm, no thanks.  
 Emily: OK. See you soon.  
 Dave: Thanks, Emily.

### Audio 5.05

- 1 Could you drive me home, please?
- 2 Can I get you a coffee?
- 3 I'm sorry, I can't at the moment.
- 4 Could you do it for me?

### Audio 5.06

- 1 Could you help me?
- 2 Could you make me a coffee?
- 3 Could you send me an email?
- 4 Could you drive me home?
- 5 Could you type the report?
- 6 Could you get some milk?

### Audio 5.07 and 5.08

A: Hi Jo, are you OK?  
 B: No. Could you help me?  
 A: Of course. What's the problem?  
 B: I can't open this report.  
 A: Can I look? Oh, OK. Do you have the password?  
 B: No, I don't. Sorry. Could you open it for me?  
 A: All right. Give me two minutes.  
 B: Thank you so much!  
 A: No problem!

### Audio 5.09

Theo: Sam, what's the date today?  
 Sam: It's the 9th of January, Theo. It's my birthday!  
 Theo: Is it?! Happy birthday!  
 Sam: Thank you! It's just a normal day for me. I don't usually do anything different or special.  
 Theo: Really, why not?  
 Sam: I don't know. I don't really like birthdays, and my friends don't usually remember the date.  
 Theo: What?!  
 Sam: Well, sometimes they remember. Sometimes I have a birthday picnic in the park with them. I really like picnics.  
 Theo: Oh. I really love my birthday! It's my favourite day of the year!  
 Sam: Ha. When's your birthday?  
 Theo: It's in June. June the seventeenth.  
 Sam: What do you usually do?  
 Theo: I always have lunch with my family at my parents' home. My mum always makes my favourite food, and my dad makes me a birthday cake. Then in the evening I meet my friends and go out for a meal in a restaurant. Sometimes I have a party in my apartment if my birthday is at the weekend.  
 Sam: Oh wow! You do a lot on your birthday!  
 Theo: You can come this year!



## Audio 5.10

- 1 It's the twenty-fifth of July.
- 2 My birthday is on the first of May.
- 3 Today is the eighteenth of February.
- 4 His birthday is on the third of April.

## UNIT 6

### Audio 6.01

Great one-bedroom apartment in the city centre. £175 per night. Small, beautiful apartment in the city centre. It has a lovely living room with a big sofa, an armchair and a television. The kitchen has a cooker and a fridge. The bedroom has a big bed, a chair and a table with a beautiful lamp on it. It doesn't have a garden, but it is near a great park.

### Audio 6.02

- A: Where do you live?  
 B: I live in Geneva, next to the lake.  
 A: Do you live in an apartment or a house?  
 B: An apartment. It's on the 12th floor.  
 A: Is it near your office?  
 B: Yes, it's only ten minutes by bike. I live with two of my colleagues. Look, you can see them in this photo. That's Eun and that's Ed.  
 A: Is that your cat on the floor in front of Ed?  
 B: Yes, that's Mochi. He usually sleeps under my bed and we can't see him!

### Audio 6.03

- 1 It's under the window.
- 2 It's on the shelf.
- 3 It's next to the bath.
- 4 It's in front of you.
- 5 Is it between the chairs?
- 6 Is it near your house?
- 7 Is it behind the bed?
- 8 Is it in the fridge?

### Audio 6.04

- A: Do you like your new apartment?  
 B: Yes, it's great! There's a big kitchen, a living room and there are two bedrooms.  
 A: Is there a garden?  
 B: No, there isn't, but it's next to a park.  
 A: Do you live in the town centre?  
 B: Yes, it's great! There's a cinema, a museum and a library near me. There aren't any sports centres, but there's a swimming pool.  
 A: Is there a train station?  
 B: No, there isn't, but there's a bus station.

### Audio 6.05

- 1 There's a very good café.
- 2 Are there any supermarkets near here?
- 3 There isn't a park in the area.
- 4 There are two museums.
- 5 Is there a Thai restaurant?
- 6 No, there isn't.

### Audio 6.06

- Presenter: Hello and welcome to the 'My home' podcast. Today's question is: What do you need in a city or town? Genevieve, let's start with you – what's important for you in the place that you live?
- Genevieve: Well, I live in a very small place. There isn't much there! I think good schools are important, but there aren't any in my town – my children's school is about twenty minutes away in a different town. Erm, I think shops are important, too. We don't have a shopping centre, but there's a small supermarket and a post office.
- Presenter: How about a sports centre? Is that important for you?
- Genevieve: Not really. We don't have a sports centre, but we have a swimming pool and there's a lovely park. The park is my favourite place in town. I often walk or run there.
- Presenter: Great, thanks. What about your town, Tomas? Is it big or small?
- Tomas: Well, I'm also from a small town, but there is a lot there. For example, we have a school and a shopping centre.
- Presenter: And what's important for you in the place that you live?
- Tomas: Well, sport is very important for me, so I'm happy there's a big sports centre and a swimming pool near my house. I think restaurants are important, too. There's a cheap Italian restaurant and an expensive Thai restaurant in my town.
- Presenter: Mmm, I love Thai food! And what about libraries or museums? Are they important for you?
- Tomas: Yeah, I guess they're important, too. We have a library, but we don't have a museum.
- Presenter: OK, thanks. And Liane? What about your town?
- Liane: I don't live in a town, I live in a big city.
- Presenter: And what's important for you where you live?
- Liane: Everything! I love my city because there are lots of places to go – shops, parks, supermarkets, hotels, restaurants ... There are also some libraries, museums, two sports centres and a hospital. My favourite place is the Turkish restaurant near my apartment. Oh, and for travel, there are two train stations and a bus station, but there isn't an airport.
- Presenter: Great! Thanks, everyone.

### Audio 6.07

- Jago: Hey Lily, it's me.  
 Lily: Jago! Where *are* you? You're 30 minutes late!  
 Jago: I know, sorry! I'm at the train station now. Where are you? Are you at the cinema?  
 Lily: Yes, of course! The film starts in 15 minutes.  
 Jago: Oh, OK. How far is the cinema from the train station?  
 Lily: About 10 minutes by bus. Take the number 41 or 42. There's a bus stop opposite the train station entrance.  
 Jago: On North Street?  
 Lily: Yes, it's next to the post office.  
 Jago: OK ... bus number 41 or 42. And where's the cinema?  
 Lily: It's in the shopping centre, on the 2nd floor, next to the pizza restaurant.

Jago: 2nd floor, pizza restaurant – got it!  
 Lily: I'm near the information desk opposite the lift. I have our tickets.  
 Jago: OK, great! See you soon!  
 Lily: See you soon, Jago.

## Audio 6.08

- 1 It's near the supermarket.
- 2 It's next to the sports centre.
- 3 It's to the right of the hospital.
- 4 I'm in front of the train station.
- 5 It's on the left of the library.
- 6 It's opposite the post office.

## Audio 6.9 and 6.10

A: Excuse me?  
 B: Yes?  
 A: Is there a library near here?  
 B: Yes, there is.  
 A: How far is it?  
 B: About ten minutes from here.  
 A: How do I get there?  
 B: Do you know the museum?  
 A: Yes, I do.  
 B: It's opposite the museum, next to the post office.  
 A: Great, thank you.

## UNIT 7

### Audio 7.01

- 1 Where do you live?
- 2 Who do you live with?
- 3 What do you do?
- 4 When do you work?
- 5 How do you do it?
- 6 Why do you like it?

### Audio 7.02

Interviewer: Hello and welcome to 'Health Talk'. Today I'm with blogger and influencer Zorah Z. Hi Zorah, nice to meet you.  
 Zorah: Nice to meet you, too.  
 Interviewer: Now, you're a social media influencer. What does that mean?  
 Zorah: Well, I have a blog about food and health.  
 Interviewer: Great! So, what do you do to stay healthy?  
 Zorah: Well, I run almost every day and I swim two times a week. Um, I also play football and tennis. But I never do exercise on Sundays.  
 Interviewer: Wow! That's a lot of exercise.  
 Zorah: Yeah, exercise is very important to me. It helps me stay healthy ... and happy. I always feel good after exercise.  
 Interviewer: And what about food? Do you always eat healthy food?  
 Zorah: Yeah, I usually eat healthy food. I love it!  
 Interviewer: What do you usually cook?  
 Zorah: I cook lots of vegetables, some fish, chicken ... I cook a lot of Thai and Japanese food. I love fruit, but I also make a great chocolate cake!  
 Interviewer: Nice! So, lots of exercise and healthy food. What else do you do to be healthy?  
 Zorah: I don't have a car, so I always walk or cycle. Um ... and I do little things – for example, I drink green tea or hot water with lemon every morning.

Interviewer: And how do you relax?  
 Zorah: I have a long bath every evening, and every morning I sit in my garden and spend five minutes alone before I take my children to school. What else? Um, I read books, I listen to music and sometimes I paint.  
 Interviewer: What do you paint?  
 Zorah: I usually paint pictures of people, but sometimes I paint the flowers in my garden.  
 Interviewer: What do you do at the weekends?  
 Zorah: I usually go for a long walk or take my children to the park to feed the ducks ... Erm, I visit my friends, and I call my family. I don't go on social media or spend a lot of time online at the weekends.  
 Interviewer: Thanks Zorah. That's really interesting!

### Audio 7.03

- 1 Was it your birthday last week?
- 2 Yes, it was.
- 3 Was the restaurant good?
- 4 Yes, it was. The food was amazing!
- 5 Were you at the cinema last night?
- 6 No, we weren't. We were at work.

### Audio 7.04

- 1 A: Hello?  
 B: Hi Zoe, how are you?  
 A: Not great.  
 B: Oh no! What's wrong?  
 A: I've got a cold, and a really bad earache.  
 B: Oh, poor you. Are you at work?  
 A: No, I'm not. I'm at home.  
 B: Good. Have a hot drink and go to bed.  
 A: Yes, I want to sleep.  
 B: OK, get well soon.  
 A: Thanks. Bye.  
 B: Bye.
- 2 A: Hi Jo. I'm sorry I'm late.  
 B: Oh, hi. Where *were* you?  
 A: I was with Chen. She's got really bad backache.  
 B: Oh no, poor Chen. Is she at home?  
 A: Yes, she's in bed now. She can't come for dinner with us. Her back really hurts!  
 B: That's not good. I hope she feels better soon.  
 A: Yeah, me too.
- 3 A: Hello.  
 B: Hi Alexis. Are you OK? You weren't in class this morning.  
 A: No, I feel terrible!  
 B: What's the problem?  
 A: I've got stomach ache. It really hurts! And my head hurts, too.  
 B: Poor you.  
 A: Can you tell the teacher this afternoon?  
 B: Of course! Get well soon!  
 A: Great. Thank you ...

### Audio 7.05

- 1 backache
- 2 a cold
- 3 earache
- 4 a headache
- 5 stomach ache
- 6 toothache

## Audio 7.06 and 7.07

A: Hello, Sadie.  
 B: Hi Emil. I'm really sorry but I can't come to work today.  
 A: What's the problem?  
 B: I don't feel well.  
 A: What's wrong?  
 B: I've got a really bad headache and my eyes hurt.  
 A: Poor you.  
 B: I'm sorry about work today.  
 A: It's OK. You stay at home and rest.  
 B: Thank you.  
 A: Get well soon.  
 A: Thanks.

## Audio 7.08

Jesse: Hey Corinne, how are you?  
 Corrine: Hi Jesse. I'm fine, thanks. You?  
 Jesse: Yeah, I'm good. What's that?  
 Corrine: It's an advert for a new sports centre in town. It opens next week.  
 Jesse: Oh, can I see? I want to do more exercise.  
 Corrine: Sure, here you go. Look, there's a gym and a swimming pool. They have classes, too.  
 Jesse: Let's see ... yoga classes! I really want to do yoga.  
 Corrine: I do yoga.  
 Jesse: Really? When do you do it?  
 Corrine: I go to classes once a week, and I practice it every day. Sometimes I do it at home, and sometimes in the park with a friend.  
 Jesse: In the park?! Nice!  
 Corrine: Yes. Outdoor exercise is great!  
 Jesse: Have you got any yoga tips for me?  
 Corrine: Erm ... wear comfortable clothes, remember to breathe and don't eat a big meal before your class!  
 Jesse: Haha! Thanks.  
 Corrine: You can also take a friend to class with you. Exercise is fun with friends! What exercise do you do now?  
 Jesse: Hmm. I don't do a lot of sport or exercise – I only have time at the weekend. I play cricket with my friends on Sundays, and sometimes I go for a run on Saturday morning.  
 Corrine: Who do you run with?  
 Jesse: I always run alone. I listen to my favourite music.  
 Corrine: I'd like to run. Any tips?  
 Jesse: Sure. Always warm up first – walk for five or ten minutes before you run. And wear good shoes.  
 Corrine: OK. Anything else?  
 Jesse: Drink lots of water. Oh, and listen to music you love!  
 Corrine: Thanks, Jesse! ... hey, there are basketball classes at the new sports centre ....

## UNIT 8

### Audio 8.01

- 1 travelled
- 2 walked
- 3 watched
- 4 started
- 5 stopped
- 6 planned
- 7 arrived
- 8 visited
- 9 wanted
- 10 liked

### Audio 8.02

Anders: Hey Sally! How was your weekend?  
 Sally: It was amazing! I was in Paris!  
 Anders: Really?!  
 Sally: Yeah. It was Luisa's 40th birthday last week, and it is my 40th birthday soon, so we wanted a weekend break to do something special.  
 Anders: Nice!  
 Sally: We travelled there by train – it was really fast! The train was at 5 p.m. on Friday and we arrived in Paris at 7. We stayed in a hotel in the centre of Paris next to the River Seine.  
 Anders: Was it expensive?  
 Sally: Well, we booked a different hotel online, but when we arrived it was full, so we didn't stay there.  
 Anders: Oh no!  
 Sally: It was OK. They moved us to another hotel – a very expensive one! It was beautiful ... look!  
 Anders: Oh, it's lovely!  
 Sally: It was great... very clean, and our room was big! And the people in the hotel were really friendly ... we were very happy there!  
 Anders: How was the food?  
 Sally: We loved it! The hotel restaurant was great. We tried lots of typical French food. It wasn't cheap, but it was delicious!  
 Anders: Mmm! Was the weather good?  
 Sally: Yes. On Saturday we walked around the city streets – the buildings in Paris are beautiful. We visited a food market and tried some cheese. In the afternoon we walked along the Champs-Élysées. It's a famous street with lots of expensive shops, but we didn't buy anything! On Sunday we visited the Louvre Museum and looked at the famous paintings there.  
 Anders: It sounds like a great weekend!  
 Sally: Yeah, it was perfect!

### Audio 8.03

- 1 He didn't go to work yesterday.
- 2 I didn't do any exercise last week.
- 3 We didn't have a barbecue at the weekend.
- 4 They didn't meet us yesterday.
- 5 I didn't get the bus to work today.
- 6 She didn't read the email I sent.



### Audio 8.04

- 1 They didn't get up early.
- 2 I didn't drink any coffee.
- 3 We didn't go out last night.
- 4 She didn't buy me a present.

### Audio 8.05

**1**  
Ticket Seller: Can I help you?  
Customer: Could I have a ticket to San José please?  
Ticket Seller: For today?  
Customer: Yes, please. I'd like to leave this morning.  
Ticket Seller: OK. Is that a single or a return?  
Customer: A return please – going and coming back today.  
Ticket Seller: OK. That's \$35.50.  
Customer: Here you go. What time is the next train?  
Ticket Seller: Let me check. It leaves at 8.45.  
Customer: Great. What time does it arrive in San José?  
Ticket Seller: It arrives at 9.30.  
Customer: Thanks. What platform is it?  
Ticket Seller: It leaves from platform 18.  
Customer: Thanks.

**2**  
Jack: Excuse me.  
Passer-by: Can I help you?  
Jack: Yes. Is there a ticket machine here? The ticket office isn't open, and we want to go to the airport.  
Passer-by: Yes, it's over there. Next to gate 5.  
Jack and Ruth: Thank you.  
Jack: OK, let's see ... two tickets to Amsterdam Airport ... singles ... leaving now ... €28.  
OK, erm, pay with card ... have you got your card, Ruth?  
Ruth: Sure. Here you go.  
Jack: Thanks. OK, let's go! The next bus is at 8 o'clock ... only five minutes!  
Ruth: What gate does it leave from?  
Jack: Erm, let's see ... Gate 1.  
Ruth: Look! It's over there.

**3**  
Ticket Seller: Hi, how can I help you?  
Customer: I'd like to buy a monthly pass, please.  
Ticket Seller: Sure. From today?  
Customer: No, from tomorrow, please.  
Ticket Seller: OK. That's £62.50.  
Customer: Here you go.  
Ticket Seller: Thank you. OK, here you go. You can use it on any bus in Manchester.  
Customer: Great! Thank you.

### Audio 8.06

- 1 Can I buy a monthly pass for the city?
- 2 What time does the last train leave?
- 3 The next bus is at 9 o'clock.
- 4 The train leaves from platform 1.

### Audio 8.07

- 1 A: How much is a return?  
B: It's £21.15.
- 2 A: How much is a single to Poznan?  
B: It's €12.90.
- 3 A: A monthly pass, please.  
B: That's \$60.45.
- 4 A: How much is a single?  
B: It's €82.30.
- 5 A: A return to Heathrow Airport, please.  
B: £40.90, please.
- 6 A: A single to Dunedin, please.  
B: That's \$35.15.

### Audio 8.08 and 8.09

A: Can I help you?  
B: Can I have a single to Málaga please?  
A: For today?  
B: Yes, please.  
A: For what time?  
B: What time's the next train?  
A: Let me check. It leaves at 11.45.  
B: And when does it arrive in Málaga?  
A: It arrives at 2.30 p.m.  
B: That's great.  
A: OK. That's one single to Málaga.  
B: How much is it?  
A: That's €32.50.  
B: Thanks. What platform is it?  
A: The Málaga trains leave from platform 3.  
B: Thanks very much.

## LEAD-IN

- 1A** 1 pizza 4 restaurant  
2 photo 5 park  
3 bus 6 coffee
- 1B** A 3 B 1 C 4 D 6 E 2 F 5
- 2A** a two d eight  
b 4 e 10  
c seven
- 2B** 2 2/two 6 6/six  
3 5/five 7 8/eight  
4 10/ten 8 7/seven  
5 3/three
- 3A** 1 Sunday 5 Tuesday  
2 Thursday 6 Saturday  
3 Monday 7 Wednesday  
4 Friday
- 3B** 2 Tuesday 5 Friday  
3 Wednesday 6 Saturday  
4 Thursday
- 4A** 1 d 2 f 3 e 4 a 5 c 6 b
- 4B** 1 page 5 English  
2 repeat 6 know  
3 don't 7 what's  
4 understand 8 thank

## UNIT 1

### Lesson 1A

#### VOCABULARY

- 1** 1 Good afternoon  
2 Hello  
3 Bye  
4 See you  
5 Hi  
6 Hey  
7 Good night  
8 Bye
- 2** 1 b 2 a 3 a 4 b 5 a 6 a

#### GRAMMAR

- 3** 1 I'm from India.  
2 I'm not from Poland.  
3 Are you a student?  
4 You are South Korean.  
5 You aren't Vietnamese.  
6 Are you from the US?  
7 I'm not a teacher.  
8 Where are you from?

- 4** 1 a 2 b 3 b 4 c

- 5A** 1 I'm  
2 I'm  
3 Where are  
4 I'm from  
5 Are you  
6 I'm not  
7 Are you  
8 Yes

#### PRONUNCIATION

- 6** 1 B 2 A 3 A 4 B

#### LISTENING

- 7A** 1 B

- 7B** 1 French 6 Student  
2 Marseilles 7 British  
3 Student 8 Cardiff  
4 Japanese 9 Teacher  
5 Osaka

- 7C** 1 I'm 4 from  
2 meet 5 Where  
3 Are 6 not

#### WRITING

- 8A** 1 Warsaw 4 Zurich  
2 Peter 5 Wang  
3 Switzerland 6 Shanghai

- 8B** Ewa: Hello everyone. I'm Ewa. I'm from Warsaw in Poland. Where are you from?  
Peter: Hi Ewa, I'm Peter. I'm from Geneva in Switzerland.  
Noemi: Hello everyone, I'm Noemi. I'm also Swiss.  
Peter: Really? Where are you from? Are you from Geneva?  
Noemi: No, I'm not. I'm from Zurich.  
Wang: Hi, I'm Wang. I'm Chinese. I'm from Shanghai.  
Ewa: Hi Wang. Are you in China now?  
Wang: No, I'm not. I'm in the UK.

- 9** Sample answer:  
M: Hello, I'm Meera. I'm from Mumbai in India.  
P: Hi Meera. I'm Patrick. Are you in Mumbai now?  
M: No, I'm not. I'm in New York. Where are you from?  
P: I'm from Birmingham in the UK, but I'm in Poznan in Poland now.  
N: Hi, I'm Nina.  
P: Where are you from Nina?  
N: I'm from Paris in France.  
M: Are you in Paris now?  
N: No, I'm not. I'm in Mexico City in Mexico now.

### Lesson 1B

#### VOCABULARY

- 1** 1 B 2 F 3 A 4 E 5 C 6 D
- 2** 1 driver 4 player  
2 worker 5 designer  
3 officer 6 assistant

- 3** 1 an 2 a 3 an 4 a 5 a 6 a

#### GRAMMAR

- 4** 1 b 2 c 3 b 4 a 5 c 6 b
- 5** 1 Elena isn't a police officer. ~~She~~ **She's** a businesswoman.  
2 A: Is Anya a nurse?  
B: Yes, ~~she's~~. **she is**.  
3 The Eiffel Tower isn't in Rome. ~~She's~~ **It's** in Paris.  
4 ~~He is~~ **Is he** a taxi driver?  
5 Where **is** Diego **is** from?  
6 ~~He's~~ **are** from South Korea.  
7 A: Is Laura a digital designer?  
B: Yes, ~~she are~~ **is**.  
8 What's ~~lapiz~~ in English?
- 6** 1 She's from Beijing.  
2 He's a businessperson.  
3 It isn't in London / It's not in London.  
4 Where's Sophie from?  
5 Is he a teacher?  
6 What's Jack's job?  
7 She isn't / She's not an office worker. She's a shop assistant.  
8 The Colosseum isn't in Milan. It's in Rome.

## PRONUNCIATION

- 7A** 1 a businesswoman  
 2 an actor  
 3 a police officer  
 4 a singer  
 5 a taxi driver  
 6 an office worker  
 7 a nurse  
 8 a shop assistant  
 9 a digital designer  
 10 a football player

## READING

**8A** a digital designer, a doctor, a student, a waiter

**8B**

name	nationality	job
Sandra Martínez	Colombian	student / waiter
Rob Marshall	British	office worker
Kasia Wójcik	Polish	doctor
Charlie Cox	American	digital designer / artist

- 8C** 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 F  
 6 F 7 F 8 F 9 F 10 T

## Lesson 1C

### VOCABULARY

- 1A** 1 J 2 K 3 D 4 P 5 F  
 6 N 7 I 8 O 9 U 10 R

- 1C** 1 S 2 U 3 O 4 R 5 Y 6 E

## PRONUNCIATION

- 2** 1 doctor 5 teacher  
 2 park 6 photo  
 3 Argentina 7 artist  
 4 book 8 Vietnam

## HOW TO ...

### 3A B

- 3B** 1 Isabel Fernandez  
 2 Spanish  
 3 5 Lennox Street, Bristol  
 4 713 9205

- 3C** 1 What's your surname?  
 2 How do you spell your surname?  
 3 What's your first name?  
 4 What's your address?  
 5 What's your phone number?  
 6 Can you repeat that please?

## SPEAKING

- 4** 1 help 5 Sorry  
 2 moment 6 right  
 3 spell 7 Perfect  
 4 wrong 8 problem

## Lesson 1D

### GRAMMAR

- 1A** 1 a 2 a 3 an 4 a 5 an 6 an 7 a 8 a

- 1B** 1 purses  
 2 wallets  
 3 umbrellas  
 4 laptops  
 5 apples

- 6 American passports  
 7 mobile phones  
 8 countries  
**2** 1 I have two mobile phones.  
 2 We have an umbrella.  
 3 Teri has a bottle of water.  
 4 I have an apple in my bag.  
 5 My city has three supermarkets.  
 6 I have keys in my bag.

- 3** 1 c 2 b 3 b 4 a

## LISTENING

- 4A** 1 B 2 C

- 4B** 1 British  
 2 Sheffield  
 3 London  
 4 police officer  
 5 Brazilian  
 6 Manaus  
 7 Washington  
 8 digital designer

- 4C** 1 T 2 F 3 F 4 F 5 T 6 F

## UNIT 2

## Lesson 2A

### VOCABULARY

- 1A** 1 eleven  
 2 twelve  
 3 thirteen  
 4 fourteen  
 5 fifteen  
 6 sixteen  
 7 seventeen  
 8 eighteen  
 9 nineteen

- 1B** 1 80 2 100 3 90 4 30 5 60  
 6 50 7 20 8 40

- 1C** 1 12 2 73 3 89 4 19 5 30  
 6 99 7 13 8 22 9 46 10 60

## PRONUNCIATION

- 2** 1 b 2 a 3 a 4 b 5 a 6 b 7 b 8 a

## VOCABULARY

- 3A** 1 new 5 difficult  
 2 tired 6 friendly  
 3 good 7 favourite  
 4 young 8 beautiful

- 3B** 1 difficult 4 old  
 2 big / large 5 bad  
 3 sad / unhappy

- 3C** 1 tired 4 beautiful  
 2 new 5 friendly  
 3 favourite 6 easy

## GRAMMAR

- 4A** 1 c 2 b 3 a 4 b

- 4B** 1 Who 5 Are  
 2 They're 6 not  
 3 Where 7 they  
 4 from 8 Yes



- 4D** 1 A: Where are you and Zeynep from?  
B: We are from Turkey.  
2 A: Are Jane and Andy doctors?  
B: No, they're not.  
3 A: Are the bikes new?  
B: No, they're old.  
4 A: Are John and Simon cold?  
B: Yes, they are.  
5 A: Who are they?  
B: They're my friends.  
6 A: Are your parents Australian?  
B: Yes, they are.

## READING

**5A** 1 c 2 a

**5B** A

**5C** 1 T 2 F 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 F

**5D** 1 happy 4 good  
2 cold 5 old  
3 small

## Lesson 2B

### VOCABULARY

- |            |             |
|------------|-------------|
| 1 1 mother | 6 son       |
| 2 wife     | 7 brother   |
| 3 father   | 8 sister    |
| 4 husband  | 9 daughter  |
| 5 parents  | 10 children |
- 
- |             |            |
|-------------|------------|
| 2 1 parents | 4 sister   |
| 2 mother    | 5 husband  |
| 3 father    | 6 children |
- 
- |          |           |
|----------|-----------|
| 3A 1 men | 4 baby    |
| 2 girls  | 5 woman's |
| 3 people |           |
- 
- |             |          |
|-------------|----------|
| 3B 1 babies | 4 people |
| 2 child     | 5 woman  |
| 3 men       |          |

### PRONUNCIATION

- |                     |                    |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| 4A 1 <u>s</u> ister | 5 <u>ch</u> ildren |
| 2 <u>br</u> other   | 6 <u>p</u> eople   |
| 3 <u>h</u> usband   | 7 <u>w</u> omen    |
| 4 <u>pa</u> rents   | 8 <u>da</u> ughter |

### GRAMMAR

**5A** 1 c 2 c 3 a 4 b 5 c 6 a 7 b 8 a

**5B** 1 your 5 Their  
2 his 6 my  
3 our 7 Her  
4 Its

**5C** 1 My 5 they're  
2 He's 6 Our  
3 His 7 Her  
4 Our 8 Its

### LISTENING

**6A** He has three children.

**6B** 1 Giulia  
2 Sofia  
3 Olivia

**6C** 1 their garden 5 isn't  
2 21 6 teacher  
3 students 7 Italy  
4 Vancouver 8 Italian

## WRITING

**7A** This is a photo of my brother Dave and his family on holiday in London. Dave's wife Lisa is Australian and Dave's from the USA. Dave's a doctor and Lisa's a businesswoman. They have two sons aged five and six. Their names are Otis and Ralph. They're very happy children!

**7B** 1 This is Amelia and her son Louis.  
2 My mum is British and my dad is German.  
3 My bike is new and it's very good!  
4 They have a son and a daughter.  
5 Jack is cold and tired.  
6 Their names are Clare and Eddy.

**7D** Sample answer

This is my friend, Li Na and her husband Wang Wei. She is my friend from university. They are from Singapore. Li Na is an office worker and Wang Wei is a teacher. They have two children, a son and a daughter. Their names are Li Jun and An Qi.

## Lesson 2C

### VOCABULARY

**1A** 1 D 2 A 3 E 4 B 5 C

1B 1 bad	6 great
2 good	7 OK
3 fine	8 good
4 well	9 well
5 well	10 good

### HOW TO ...

**2A** a, c

2B 1 white	4 friendly
2 tired	5 school
3 Joe	

**2C** 1 How is your new car?  
2 I'm very happy with it.  
3 Not bad, but I'm very tired.  
4 My father isn't very well.

### PRONUNCIATION

**3A** 1 e 2 c 3 d 4 f 5 b 6 a

### SPEAKING

4A 1 see	5 happy
2 things	6 time
3 bad	7 chat
4 How's	8 later

## Lesson 2D

### GRAMMAR

1A 2 a person	5 manner
3 a place	6 an age
4 a time	

**1B** 1 How old is Nasim?  
2 What's Jenny's favourite book?  
3 When is our English class?  
4 How are things?  
5 Where are you from?  
6 Who is your favourite football player?

1C 1 When	4 Where
2 How	5 How
3 Who	6 What

**1D** 1 c 2 b 3 c 4 a

## READING

2A 1 shop 2 Canada

2B 1 T 2 F 3 T 4 F 5 T 6 T

2C 1 f 2 e 3 d 4 c 5 b 6 a 7 a 8 g

## REVIEW 1-2

### GRAMMAR

- 1 1 Hi, I'm Javier.  
2 Are you a student?  
3 Yes, I am.  
4 I'm Marco.  
5 Where are you from, Marco?  
6 I'm Italian.  
7 Where are you from?  
8 I'm from Spain.
- 2 1 a 2 c 3 b 4 a 5 c 6 b
- 3 1 Who 4 aren't  
2 They're 5 they  
3 Are 6 are
- 4 1 's 7 isn't  
2 'm 8 's  
3 's 9 are  
4 's 10 's  
5 are 11 aren't  
6 're 12 're
- 5 1 b 2 a 3 c 4 a
- 6 1 how; Where 3 How old; When  
2 Who; Where 4 What's; what's

### VOCABULARY

- 7A 1 hey  
2 good morning  
3 hi  
4 see you  
5 good evening  
6 good night  
7 goodbye  
8 bye  
9 good afternoon  
10 hello
- 7B 1 See you  
2 Good morning  
3 Bye  
4 Good afternoon
- 8A 1 Brazilian  
2 French  
3 South Korean  
4 Turkish  
5 Indian  
6 American  
7 Swiss  
8 Vietnamese  
9 British  
10 German
- 8B 1 Chinese 4 The UK  
2 Italy 5 Vietnamese  
3 Swiss
- 9 1 g 2 e 3 b 4 a 5 c 6 f 7 d
- 10 1 doctor 5 player  
2 driver 6 waiter  
3 officer 7 office  
4 teacher 8 assistant

- 11 2 fifty-nine 6 ninety-one  
3 forty 7 fifty-two  
4 seventy-eight 8 forty-six  
5 eighty-three
- 12A 1 father 3 daughter  
2 mother 4 son
- 12B 1 husband 4 parents  
2 brother 5 children  
3 wife 6 sister
- 13 1 small 4 difficult  
2 happy 5 old  
3 good 6 hot

## UNIT 3

### Lesson 3A

#### VOCABULARY

- 1A 1 car 5 watch  
2 bed 6 camera  
3 bike 7 guitar  
4 ring 8 coffee machine
- 1B 1 B 2 D 3 C 4 G 5 H 6 F 7 A 8 E
- 1C 1 b 2 c 3 b 4 a 5 c 6 a
- 2 yellow, white, blue, orange, green, brown, pink, black, purple, red

#### GRAMMAR

- 3A 1 Hassan's new bike is light purple and yellow.  
2 My father's mother is from Budapest.  
3 Zehra is my friend Berat's sister.  
4 What is Federica's phone number?  
5 Olivia's guitar is Spanish.  
6 Is that Lian's new car?  
7 Antoni's watch is Italian.  
8 Seo-Yeon's favourite thing is her cat.

3B 2 P 3 C 4 C 5 P 6 C 7 P 8 P

3C 1 b 2 c 3 b 4 a

#### PRONUNCIATION

4A 1 b 2 b 3 a 4 c 5 b 6 c 7 a 8 c

#### READING

- 5A camera, coffee machine, guitar
- 5B 2 c 3 b 4 a 5 c 6 c 7 a 8 b

#### WRITING

- 6A B
- 6B 1 but 5 and  
2 and 6 but  
3 but 7 but  
4 but 8 but
- 6C 1 and 3 and  
2 but 4 but
- 6D Sample answer  
I have three favourite things. One of them is my ring. It's from my husband and it's very old. It's beautiful! I also love my watch. It's from Switzerland and it's very expensive! Another favourite thing is my picture of the mountains in Germany. It's from my daughter and I love it!

## Lesson 3B

### VOCABULARY

- 1A** 1 scissors 2 mouse 3 sticky notes 4 tablet 5 pencil 6 glasses

- 1B** 1 headphones 2 keyboard 3 mouse 4 glasses 5 notebook 6 pencils 7 pens 8 sticky notes 9 bottle of water 10 cup 11 plant 12 scissors

- 1C** 1 computer 2 keyboard 3 mouse 4 notebooks 5 pens 6 headphones 7 bottle 8 book

### GRAMMAR

- 2A** 1 I have an old phone.  
2 I don't have any pencils on my desk.  
3 Do Petr and Jun have any children?  
4 We have some friends from Vietnam.  
5 Do they have any headphones?  
6 The students don't have any books.

- 2B** 1 do 2 have 3 have 4 don't 5 a 6 an 7 any 8 do 9 some 10 don't

- 2C** 1 c 2 b 3 c 4 c 5 b 6 b 7 b 8 a

### PRONUNCIATION

- 3A** 1 A: Do you have any scissors?  
B: No, I don't.  
2 A: Do you have a bottle of water?  
B: Yes, I do.  
3 A: Do they have a car?  
B: Yes, they do.  
4 A: Do we have any pencils?  
B: No, we don't.

### LISTENING

**4A** c

**4B**

	Luca	Mia
a book	✓	
a notebook		✓
glasses	✓	
a bottle of water	✓	✓
a pen		✓
a tablet	✓	✓

- 4C** 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 F 5 T 6 T 7 F 8 F

- 4D** 1 questions 2 some 3 any

- 4 big 5 red 6 different

## Lesson 3C

### VOCABULARY

- 1A** 1 coat 2 top 3 suit 4 jumper 5 jacket 6 T-shirt 7 shoes 8 shirt 9 skirt 10 dress 11 jeans 12 trousers

- 1B** 1 T-shirt 2 jeans 3 suit 4 shoes 5 dress 6 coat 7 jumper 8 skirt

- 1C** 1 D 2 B 3 A 4 C

### HOW TO ...

**2A** jeans, top, jacket

- 2B** 1 light 2 50 3 yellow 4 30 5 small 6 red 7 large 8 75

- 2C** 1 How much is this jumper?  
2 Can I try these shoes on?  
3 The changing rooms are over there.  
4 Do you have a large size?

### PRONUNCIATION

- 3 1 F 2 F 3 U 4 F 5 U 6 U

### SPEAKING

- 4A** 1 Excuse 2 help 3 much 4 £25 5 on 6 size 7 medium 8 Here 9 changing 10 over

## Lesson 3D

### GRAMMAR

- 1A** 1 Do 2 love 3 hate 4 really like 5 Do you like 6 don't 7 like 8 do 9 think 10 really

- 1C** 1 b 2 a 3 b 4 c

- 1D** 1 don't 2 hate/dislike 3 think 4 hate/dislike 5 love 6 favourite

### LISTENING

**2A** a clothes shop; a shoe shop; a sports shop; a bookshop; a supermarket; a butcher's

- 2B** 1 bookshops 2 butcher's shops; clothes shops 3 computer shops 4 bookshops; clothes shops; shoe shops 5 clothes shops 6 supermarkets; sports shops; shoe shops

- 2C** 1 don't buy 2 big 3 books 4 computer shop 5 clothes shop 6 dark



# UNIT 4

## Lesson 4A

### VOCABULARY

- 1A **A** fruit juice **E** pasta  
**B** a tomato **F** a carrot  
**C** cheese **G** steak  
**D** an orange **H** bread

### 1B and C

fruit	vegetables	meat	drinks	other
an orange an apple a banana	a carrot a tomato a mushroom a potato	steak chicken beef	fruit juice milk	pasta bread cheese cereal an egg fish rice a sandwich

- 1D **1** A banana  
**2** Chicken  
**3** tomato  
**4** vegetables  
**5** bread  
**6** Milk

- 2A **1** rice **5** sandwich  
**2** eggs **6** apple  
**3** carrots **7** banana  
**4** mushrooms **8** coffee

- 3A **1** apple  
**2** banana  
**3** beef  
**4** bread  
**5** cheese  
**6** chicken  
**7** mushroom  
**8** orange  
**9** pasta  
**10** potato  
**11** sandwich  
**12** tomato

### GRAMMAR

- 4A **1** not often **4** usually  
**2** sometimes **5** always  
**3** often

- 4B **1** never **4** often  
**2** usually **5** don't often  
**3** always **6** sometimes

- 4C **1** I often drink fruit juice.  
**2** I never eat mushrooms.  
**3** Do you usually have cereal for breakfast?  
**4** My parents don't often eat fruit.  
**5** I don't always eat eggs on Saturday.  
**6** Do you often have rice for lunch?  
**7** Ren and Aoi sometimes have chicken for dinner. /  
Ren and Aoi have chicken for dinner sometimes.  
**8** I always have two cups of coffee in the morning.

- 4D **1** b **2** c **3** a **4** c

## LISTENING

- 5A **1** F **2** F **3** T

- 5B **a** **2** **b** **7** **c** **4** **d** **1** **e** **3** **f** **5** **g** **6** **h** **8**

- 5C **1** eat  
**2** usually  
**3** Saturdays  
**4** coffee  
**5** cheese  
**6** sometimes  
**7** family  
**8** fish

## WRITING

- 6A **1** b **2** c

- 6B **1** Hey **4** usually  
**2** well **5** Speak  
**3** questions **6** love

- 6C **1** D **2** F **3** C **4** B **5** A **6** E

Sample answer

Hi Juana,

How are you? I've very well, thanks. I have some news.

I have a new job and a new apartment! I'm in Bogotá now and I really like it here.

Are you in China now? Do you like your new job? Is the food in Beijing good? I really love Chinese food! What do you usually eat?

Speak soon,

Omar

## Lesson 4B

- 1A **1** b **2** c **3** a **4** a **5** c **6** b

- 1B **1** get **6** finish  
**2** have **7** get  
**3** leave **8** make  
**4** go **9** watch  
**5** start **10** go

- 2A **1** C **2** F **3** D **4** E **5** B **6** A

- 2B **1** C **2** E **3** B **4** A **5** D **6** F

## GRAMMAR

- 3A **1** makes **5** watches  
**2** go **6** doesn't  
**3** starts **7** does  
**4** study **8** does

- 3B **1** a **2** b **3** c **4** b

- 3C **1** is  
**2** gets up  
**3** doesn't have  
**4** has  
**5** makes  
**6** leaves  
**7** goes  
**8** doesn't finish  
**9** gets  
**10** makes  
**11** studies  
**12** starts

- 4A **1** b **2** b **3** a **4** c **5** b  
**6** a **7** b **8** a **9** c **10** b

## READING

- 5A No.

- 5B **1** J **2** J **3** K **4** J **5** J **6** K **7** J **8** K

- 5C **1** F **2** T **3** F **4** T **5** F **6** T **7** T **8** F

## Lesson 4C

- 1A** 1 Pastries  
2 Sandwiches  
3 Toast  
4 Toast and eggs  
5 Latte  
6 Espresso  
7 Americano  
8 Tea  
9 Fruit juice  
10 Mineral water

**1B** 1 E 2 F 3 H 4 B 5 A 6 C 7 G 8 D

- 1C** 1 sugar 4 glass  
2 cup 5 chopsticks  
3 pepper 6 bowl

### HOW TO ...

**2A** 1 a 2 b

- 2B** 1 cheese 4 £2.20  
2 brown 5 sparkling  
3 two coffees 6 £19.50

**3A** 1, 2, 4

- 4A** 1 breakfast 6 Anything  
2 sandwiches 7 mineral  
3 chocolate 8 sparkling  
4 Tea 9 much  
5 sugar 10 moment

## Lesson 4D

- 1A** 1 Does Akira like animals?  
2 Does Mark make dinner?  
3 Does your son have a job?  
4 Does Sandra live near you?  
5 Does Kian have children?  
6 Does Diana eat eggs for breakfast?  
7 Does the French class start at nine?  
8 Does Elias work in an office?

**1B** 1 d 2 b 3 f 4 g 5 c 6 a 7 h 8 e

- 1C** 1 Does 5 Is  
2 Do 6 Does  
3 Are 7 Do  
4 Does 8 Does

### READING

**2A** A; C; D; F

**2B** 1 e 2 b 3 f 4 c 5 a 6 d

**2C** 1 T 2 F 3 T 4 T 5 F 6 F

## REVIEW 3-4

### GRAMMAR

- 1** 1 Is Soo-jeong Andy's wife?  
2 They're Mario's children.  
3 correct  
4 Piotr and Layan's house's near here.  
5 That's my sister's office.  
6 correct  
7 It's my son's birthday today.  
8 My parents are doctors.
- 2** 1 have; don't  
2 Do; do  
3 any; some  
4 Do; have

- 3** 1 I really like your dress.  
2 Do you like video games?  
3 We don't like fish.  
4 I don't like supermarkets very much.  
5 I really love my new camera.  
6 My parents really hate big cities / My parents hate really big cities.  
7 I think Berlin is a great place.  
8 They really dislike coffee.

- 4** 1 usually 4 never  
2 always 5 sometimes  
3 often 6 don't often

- 5** 1 doesn't have  
2 leaves  
3 goes  
4 doesn't live  
5 drinks  
6 doesn't like  
7 studies  
8 has

**6** 1 b 2 c 3 a 4 b

### VOCABULARY

- 7** 1 bed 7 pink  
2 blue 8 car  
3 red 9 brown  
4 bike 10 white  
5 purple 11 camera  
6 guitar 12 ring

**8** 1 B 2 D 3 E 4 H 5 C  
6 G 7 F 8 A 9 J 10 I

- 9** 1 shirt 5 shoes  
2 trousers 6 jacket  
3 skirt 7 coat  
4 jumper 8 T-shirt

- 10** 1 rice 4 tomato  
2 cheese 5 bread  
3 pasta

- 11** 1 milk 4 rice  
2 egg 5 mushrooms  
3 banana 6 beef

- 12** 1 finish 5 watch  
2 leaves 6 get up  
3 starts 7 have  
4 makes 8 goes

- 13** 1 Americano 6 sandwich  
2 latte 7 glass  
3 bowl 8 sparkling  
4 pastry 9 spoon  
5 toast 10 forks

## UNIT 5

### Lesson 5A

#### VOCABULARY

- 1A** 1 get 5 help  
2 say 6 take  
3 call 7 thank  
4 send 8 forget

**1B** 1 b 2 c 3 a 4 c 5 b 6 a 7 c 8 b

- 1C** 1 says 5 helps  
2 gets 6 with  
3 for 7 thanks  
4 to 8 for

## GRAMMAR

- 2A** 1 I 5 her  
2 you 6 we  
3 him 7 them  
4 it

- 2B** 1 b 2 a 3 c 4 a

- 2C** 1 it 4 him  
2 them 5 her  
3 me 6 us

## PRONUNCIATION

- 3A** 1 I really like him.  
2 She never helps us.  
3 Please call her tomorrow.  
4 They don't like it.  
5 He always thanks us.  
6 She usually gets him coffee.

## READING

- 4A** c

my friend Jay	my colleague Jay
listens to me	doesn't listen to my ideas
has lunch with me	forgets important information
helps me with my problems	uses my things

- 4C** 1 F 2 F 3 T 4 F 5 T 6 T 7 F 8 F

## WRITING

- 5A** 1 good 3 listens  
2 says 4 doesn't send

- 5B** 1 she 6 us  
2 She 7 she  
3 she 8 us  
4 her 9 We  
5 she 10 her

- 6** Sample answer  
My colleague Baris is great! He's really friendly. He always gets a coffee for me in the morning and sometimes he gets me a pastry, too. He never forgets my birthday – he always gives me a cake! He listens to me and helps me with my work problems. He has lots of good ideas. We have lunch together every day. I like Baris a lot.

## Lesson 5B

### VOCABULARY

- 1A** 1 use 4 read  
2 dance 5 sleep  
3 play 6 remember

- 1B** 1 a 2 b 3 e 4 f 5 d 6 c

- 1C** A drive D paint  
B catch E run  
C sing F throw

- 1D** 1 b 2 b 3 c 4 c 5 b 6 a 7 c 8 b

- 1E** 1 drive 6 use  
2 read 7 use  
3 speak 8 type  
4 speak 9 remember  
5 remember

## GRAMMAR

- 2A** 1 Nisha can't drive a car.  
2 Omar can dance very well.  
3 Can you speak Japanese?  
4 My father can't use his coffee machine.  
5 Can Bibi cook Turkish food?  
6 Abdul can sing a song in Spanish.  
7 I'm sorry, but I can't remember your name.  
8 Can you remember important dates?

- 2B** 1 b 2 b 3 a 4 b

- 2C** 1 A: Can, speak; B: can, can, speak  
2 A: Can, drive; B: can't  
3 A: Can, paint; B: can, can, paint  
4 A: play; B: can't, can, sing  
5 A: Can, read; B: can't  
6 A: Can, play; B: can

## PRONUNCIATION

- 3A** 1 b 2 b 3 c 4 a 5 b 6 b

## LISTENING

- 4A** A, C

	Martin can	Martin can, but not very well	Martin can't
play the guitar			✓
play piano	✓		
sing a song in English	✓		
read a map	✓		
use a computer	✓		
type with his eyes closed		✓	
swim			✓
play football		✓	

- 4C** 1 tango 4 birthdays  
2 salsa 5 five  
3 paint 6 run

## Lesson 5C

### VOCABULARY

- 1A** 1 cheap 3 closed  
2 right 4 early  
**1B** 1 closed 4 open  
2 wrong 5 late  
3 cheap 6 right

- 1C** 1 d 2 f 3 a 4 c 5 b 6 e

## HOW TO ...

- 2A** 1 c 2 b

- 2B** 1 T 2 F 3 F 4 T 5 F 6 T

- 2C** 1 Could you drive me home please?  
2 Can I get you a coffee?  
3 I'm sorry, I can't at the moment.  
4 Could you do it for me?

## PRONUNCIATION

- 3A** 1 Could you help me?  
2 Could you make me a coffee?  
3 Could you send me an email?  
4 Could you drive me home?  
5 Could you type the report?  
6 Could you get some milk?



## SPEAKING

- 4A** 1 help 2 course 3 can't 4 Can  
5 you 6 right 7 so 8 problem

## Lesson 5D

### GRAMMAR

- 1A** 2 second 3 third 4 seventh 5 eleventh  
6 fifteenth 7 twentieth 8 thirty-first

- 1B** 1 twelve 2 third 3 twenty-seventh 4 fourth  
5 three 6 first 7 two 8 twentieth

- 1C** 1 f 2 d 3 h 4 g 5 e 6 a 7 b 8 c

### LISTENING

- 2A** A (Sam), E (Theo)

- 2B** 1 A 2 B

- 2C** 1 doesn't usually do anything  
2 forget 3 picnics 4 loves  
5 at his parents' house 6 father 7 sometimes

- 2D** 1 It's the twenty-fifth of July.  
2 My birthday is on the first of May.  
3 Today is the eighteenth of February.  
4 His birthday is on the third of April.

## UNIT 6

## Lesson 6A

### VOCABULARY

1A	Rooms / parts of a house	Furniture / objects
	bathroom	armchair
	bedroom	bath
	door	bed
	floor	chair
	kitchen	cooker
	living room	plant
	wall	sofa
	window	table
		television
		toilet

- 1B** 1 c 2 a 3 c 4 a 5 b 6 c 7 a 8 b

- 1C** 1 armchair 2 kitchen 3 fridge  
4 bed 5 lamp 6 garden

### GRAMMAR

- 2A** 1 on 2 in 3 near 4 next to  
5 in front of 6 under 7 between 8 behind

- 2B** 1 in 2 on 3 near 4 on  
5 behind 6 next to 7 between 8 in front of

- 2C** 1 in 2 next 3 in 4 on 5 near  
6 in 7 on 8 in front 9 under

### PRONUNCIATION

- 3A** 1 It's under the window.  
2 It's on the shelf.  
3 It's next to the bath.  
4 It's in front of you.  
5 Is it between the chairs?  
6 Is it near your house?  
7 Is it behind the bed?  
8 Is it in the fridge?

### READING

- 4A** 1 D 2 C 3 B 4 A

- 4B** lighthouse; riverboat

- 4C** 1 T 2 F 3 F 4 F 5 T 6 F

- 4D** 1 L 2 R 3 L 4 R 5 L 6 R 7 R 8 R

- 4E** 1 next to 2 on 3 under  
4 in 5 next to 6 on

## Lesson 6B

### VOCABULARY

- 1A** 1 airport 2 cinema 3 bus station  
4 shopping centre 5 hospital 6 hotel

- 1B** 1 b 2 c 3 a 4 b 5 c 6 a 7 b 8 a

### GRAMMAR

- 2A** 1 are 2 isn't 3 any 4 is  
5 isn't 6 is 7 aren't 8 any

- 2B** 1 There's 2 are 3 there 4 isn't 5 There's  
6 aren't 7 there's 8 is 9 isn't 10 there's

- 2D** 1 b 2 c 3 c 4 a

### PRONUNCIATION

- 3A** 1 There's\_a very good café.  
2 Are there\_any supermarkets near here?  
3 There\_isn't a park in the area.  
4 There\_are two museums.  
5 Is there\_a Thai restaurant?  
6 No, there\_isn't.

### LISTENING

- 4A** 1 C 2 B 3 A

- 4B** 1 supermarket 2 sports centre 3 restaurants 4 library 5 sports centres 6 an airport

- 4C** 1 T 2 T 3 F 4 F 5 T 6 F

### WRITING

- 5A** 1 D 2 B 3 A 4 C

- 5B** 1 b 2 b 3 a

- 5C** 1 Rome is great because there are lots of museums, parks and shops.  
 2 Correct  
 3 There isn't a cinema, a sports centre or a swimming pool in my town.  
 4 Correct
- 6B** Sample answer  
 Lucca is a small city in the north of Italy. It is about 45 minutes by train from Pisa and it is a great place to visit for the weekend! Lucca is a very old city and has lots of beautiful buildings. There is an interesting art museum and you can walk or cycle around the city walls. There are lots of great restaurants and cafés in Lucca. La Trattoria da Anna has the best pasta in town! There are also some great shops and a market every day in the Piazza San Michele with clothes, bags and cakes.

## Lesson 6C

### VOCABULARY

- 1 1 street 4 cash machine  
 2 buildings 5 car park  
 3 clock 6 bus stop
- 2 1 b 2 b 3 c 4 a 5 b 6 c

### HOW TO ...

- 3A** bus stop, cinema, information desk, lift, post office, restaurant, train station
- 3B** 1 train station  
 2 Jago  
 3 10  
 4 opposite  
 5 post office  
 6 second  
 7 next to  
 8 information desk

### PRONUNCIATION

- 4 1 It's near the supermarket.  
 2 It's next to the sports centre.  
 3 It's to the right of the hospital.  
 4 I'm in front of the train station.  
 5 It's on the left of the library.  
 6 It's opposite the post office.

### SPEAKING

- 5A** 1 Excuse 5 How  
 2 near 6 know  
 3 there 7 opposite  
 4 far 8 next

## Lesson 6D

### GRAMMAR

- 1A** 1 a 5 the  
 2 The 6 an  
 3 a 7 the  
 4 a 8 the
- 1B** 1 b 2 b 3 c 4 a
- 1C** 1 the 6 a  
 2 a 7 a  
 3 the 8 the  
 4 The 9 a  
 5 an 10 the

### READING

- 2A** 1 E 2 C 3 D 4 A  
**2B** 1 F 2 F 3 T 4 F 5 F 6 T

## REVIEW 5-6

### GRAMMAR

- 1 1 d 2 g 3 c 4 f 5 b 6 a 7 e  
 2 1 b 2 c 3 a 4 c 5 a 6 b  
 3 2 Leonora can't play the guitar. Hiro can play the guitar.  
 3 Leonora can drive a car. Hiro can't drive a car.  
 4 Leonora and Hiro can use chopsticks.  
 5 Leonora can't play tennis. Hiro can play tennis.  
 6 Leonora and Hiro can speak two languages.
- 4 2 eleventh 6 second  
 3 tenth 7 third  
 4 first 8 three  
 5 four
- 5 1 b 2 a 3 b 4 c 5 c 6 c 7 a 8 a
- 6 1 There are 5 There's  
 2 there's 6 there's  
 3 there isn't 7 there aren't  
 4 There's 8 there isn't
- 7 1 The 5 the  
 2 a 6 a  
 3 the 7 an  
 4 the 8 the

### VOCABULARY

- 8A** 1 get 5 helps  
 2 thanks 6 call  
 3 takes 7 says  
 4 forget 8 sends
- 8B** 1 paint 6 type  
 2 play 7 run  
 3 swim 8 read  
 4 use 9 remember  
 5 dance 10 sleep
- 9 1 early 3 open  
 2 expensive 4 wrong
- 10 1 bath 6 chair  
 2 fridge 7 sofa  
 3 toilet 8 bed  
 4 cooker 9 armchair  
 5 table 10 television
- 11A** 1 library 5 supermarket  
 2 school 6 cinema  
 3 museum 7 hospital  
 4 bank 8 airport
- 11B** 1 floor 5 exit  
 2 lift 6 cash  
 3 information 7 parking  
 4 stairs 8 stop

## UNIT 7

### Lesson 7A

#### VOCABULARY

- 1A** 1 have 5 wash  
 2 cook 6 visit  
 3 spend 7 do  
 4 clean 8 feed
- 1B** 1 b 2 c 3 b 4 a 5 c 6 b 7 a 8 a

# ANSWER KEY

- 1C** 1 alone  
2 meal  
3 ducks  
4 friends

- 5 museum  
6 bath  
7 nothing  
8 apartment

## GRAMMAR

- 2A** 1 Where  
2 How  
3 What  
4 Why

- 5 When  
6 What  
7 Who  
8 How

- 2B** 1 How do you know Sol?  
2 Who does Tinh live with?  
3 Why do you cycle to work?  
4 What do you do at the weekend?  
5 When does Sadie visit her grandmother?  
6 What time does Geoff finish work?  
7 Where do they usually go on holiday?  
8 What does Benny eat for breakfast?

- 2C** 1 f 2 g 3 h 4 e 5 b 6 d 7 c 8 a

- 2D** 1 What 4 Where  
2 How 5 Who  
3 What 6 Why

## PRONUNCIATION

- 3** 1 Where do you live?  
2 Who do you live with?  
3 What do you do?  
4 When do you work?  
5 How do you do it?  
6 Why do you like it?

## LISTENING

- 4A** A, C and D

- 4B** 1 runs 4 bath  
2 Thai 5 paints pictures  
3 green tea 6 friends

- 4C** 1, 2, 4 and 5

## WRITING

- 5A** 1 T 2 F 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 F

- 5B** 1 b 2 c 3 d 4 e 5 a

- 5C** a question mark

- 5D** 1 I play tennis, run in the park and ride my bike.  
2 What do you do to stay healthy?  
3 I play the piano (usually classical music).  
4 Mika often cooks French food.  
5 I usually visit my family at the weekend.  
6 I love my new bike – it's really great!

- 6B** Sample answer

I do lots of different things to relax. On weekdays, I usually go for a walk or a run after work. I go with my friend Choi. She's great! She always helps me with my problems. At the weekend, I get up late. Then I read a book, listen to the radio or watch television. On Saturdays, I usually cook a meal with my husband, then in the evenings we meet friends or go to the cinema. On Sundays I spend some time outside, in the garden or in the park.

## Lesson 7B

### VOCABULARY

- 1A** famous; slow; amazing; fast; rich; strong; weak; poor; best; positive

- 1B** 1 best 4 rich  
2 famous 5 positive  
3 fast 6 amazing

- 1C** 1 c 2 b 3 b 4 a 5 c 6 c 7 a 8 b

## GRAMMAR

- 2A** 1 was 5 wasn't  
2 weren't 6 Was  
3 were 7 were  
4 wasn't 8 was

- 2B** 1 b 3 a  
2 c 4 c

- 2C** 1 were; was  
2 was; was  
3 Were; wasn't; was  
4 were; were  
5 Were; weren't; were  
6 Was; was; was

## PRONUNCIATION

- 3A** 1 W 4 S; W  
2 S 5 W  
3 W 6 S; W

## READING

- 4A** b

- 4B** Photo A

- 4C** 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 F 5 T 6 F

## Lesson 7C

### VOCABULARY





- 1 1 F 2 A 3 C 4 B 5 E 6 D

### HOW TO ...

- 2A** 1 C 2 B 3 A

- 2B** 1 b 2 c 3 a 4 b 5 c 6 a

## PRONUNCIATION

3A				
	backache earache toothache	a cold	stomach ache	a headache

- 4A** 1 sorry 5 hurt  
2 problem 6 Poor  
3 well 7 stay  
4 wrong 8 Get

## Lesson 7D

### GRAMMAR

- 1A** 1 d 2 a 3 h 4 c 5 b 6 f 7 e 8 g

- 1B** 1 a 2 b 3 c 4 a

- 1C** 1 Be  
2 Listen  
3 Don't use  
4 Bring  
5 Speak  
6 Ask  
7 Don't eat  
8 Do  
9 Don't worry  
10 Have



## LISTENING

2A 1 a 2 c, d

2B 1 T 2 F 3 F 4 F 5 T 6 T 7 F 8 F

4C 1 Wear 5 Walk  
2 Remember 6 Wear  
3 Don't eat 7 Drink  
4 Take 8 Listen

## UNIT 8

### Lesson 8A

#### VOCABULARY

1A 1 e 2 h 3 a 4 g 5 i 6 c 7 b 8 d 9 j 10 f

1B 1 stay 6 arrive  
2 want 7 book  
3 relax 8 plan  
4 change 9 walk  
5 travel 10 try

1C 1 book 4 try  
2 arrives 5 changes  
3 travel 6 want

#### GRAMMAR

2A 1 stayed  
2 didn't want  
3 changed  
4 tried  
5 didn't arrive  
6 travelled  
7 stopped  
8 studied

2B 1 c 2 c 3 b 4 a

2C 1 travelled  
2 stayed  
3 was  
4 didn't want  
5 booked  
6 loved  
7 planned  
8 walked  
9 looked  
10 visited  
11 tried  
12 didn't like

#### PRONUNCIATION

3A 1 b 2 a 3 a 4 c 5 a 6 b 7 b 8 c 9 c 10 a

## LISTENING

4A b

4B B, C, D, F

4C 1 7 p.m. 5 expensive  
2 river 6 good  
3 didn't stay 7 cheese  
4 friendly 8 museum

### Lesson 8B

#### VOCABULARY

1A 2 meet 6 have  
3 buy 7 do  
4 play 8 see  
5 go

1B 2 H 3 E 4 D 5 F 6 A 7 G 8 C

1C 1 have 5 play  
2 buy 6 watch  
3 go 7 meet  
4 do 8 see

2 1 b 2 a 3 b 4 c 5 b 6 a

#### GRAMMAR

3A 2 go 6 take  
3 see 7 be  
4 know 8 drink  
5 sleep

3B 1 b 2 c 3 a 4 b

3C 1 had 5 wasn't  
2 didn't get 6 went  
3 read 7 came  
4 met 8 made

#### PRONUNCIATION

4A 1, 3

#### READING

5A Text 1 : B, C  
Text 2 : A, D

5B 1 O 2 B 3 G 4 O 5 G 6 B

5C 1 T 2 F 3 F 4 F 5 T 6 T

#### WRITING

6A had a bath, played video games, went to a café, went for a run

6B 1 and 4 and  
2 but 5 but  
3 then 6 then

6C Sample answer  
I don't usually do very much at the weekends, but last weekend I had a great weekend! On Friday, I met my best friend after work, and we went to the airport and got the plane to Krakow! It was my first time in Krakow and I loved it! On Saturday we walked around the city centre and looked at the buildings. Then we went to a restaurant and tried lots of Polish food. On Sunday, we visited the castle, then we went to the market and bought presents for our friends.

### Lesson 8C

#### VOCABULARY

1A 1 H 2 G 3 A 4 B 5 E 6 F 7 D 8 C

1B 1 gate  
2 platform  
3 single  
4 ticket machine  
5 monthly pass  
6 return  
7 passenger  
8 ticket office

1C 1 a 2 b 3 c 4 c 5 c 6 a

#### HOW TO ...

2A 1 return 4 1  
2 9.30 5 £62.50  
3 single 6 bus

2B 1 Can I buy a monthly pass for the city?  
2 What time does the last train leave?  
3 The next bus is at 9 o'clock.  
4 The train leaves from platform 1.

## PRONUNCIATION

3 1 15 2 90 3 60 4 30 5 90 6 15

## SPEAKING

- 4A 1 single 4 much  
2 next 5 platform  
3 arrive 6 leave

## Lesson 8D

### GRAMMAR

- 1A 1 I'd 5 don't want  
2 Do 6 Do  
3 like 7 wouldn't  
4 to meet 8 want

1B 1 b 2 a 3 c 4 a

- 1C 1 would 7 Do  
2 go 8 'd  
3 do 9 play  
4 want 10 like  
5 help 11 do  
6 like 12 like

## READING

2A b

2B 1 F 2 E 3 C 5 - 6 D 5 B 6 A

2C 1 D 2 B 3 C

2D 1 F 2 F 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 F

## REVIEW 7-8

### GRAMMAR

1A 1 b 2 c 3 a 4 c 5 a 6 b

- 1B 2 Where do they live?  
3 What is (What's) your favourite sport?  
4 Why do you drink green tea?  
5 Who do you live with?  
6 How do you spell 'passenger'?  
7 When do you visit your grandparents?  
8 What do you have for dinner?

- 2 1 was; wasn't 4 was; was  
2 were; was 5 were; were  
3 weren't; was 6 was; was

- 3 1 bought 6 saw  
2 came 7 left  
3 gave 8 slept  
4 got 9 wrote  
5 drank 10 did

- 4A 1 Buy  
2 Don't use  
3 Don't take  
4 Don't run  
5 Don't eat or drink  
6 Have

- 4B 1 travelled  
2 wanted  
3 stayed  
4 talked  
5 learned  
6 didn't study  
7 visited  
8 played  
9 walked  
10 arrived  
11 walked  
12 didn't want

- 5 1 I'd like 4 likes  
2 doesn't want 5 to go  
3 Would you like 6 I'd like

## VOCABULARY

- 6 B the shopping  
C my hands  
D a meal  
E my kitchen

- 7 2 best  
3 rich  
4 positive  
5 fast  
6 weak  
7 poor  
8 amazing

- 8 1 hair  
2 eye  
3 ear  
4 nose  
5 mouth  
6 tooth

9 1 b 2 c 3 a 4 c 5 a 6 b 7 a 8 c

- 10 1 watch 4 goes  
2 buy 5 have  
3 do 6 see

- 11 1 last 4 in  
2 yesterday 5 ago  
3 on

- 12 motorbike, passenger, platform, tram, boat, return, plane, underground, single, taxi

## CUMULATIVE REVIEW 1-4

### GRAMMAR

- 1 2 's 10 's  
3 Is 11 What  
4 isn't 12 Where  
5 's 13 's  
6 it 14 Is  
7 it 15 is  
8 's 16 's  
9 's

- 2 2 our 5 your  
3 my 6 my  
4 its

- 3 1 Do you have a car?  
2 Do they have any children?  
3 Do we have English class today?  
4 Do you have a new computer?  
5 Do Ricardo and Jill have a garden?  
6 Do you have my glasses?

- 4 2 We **never** eat meat or fish at home.  
 3 Do you **usually** work at the weekend?  
 4 They **sometimes** have lunch in a café.  
 5 I don't **usually** have eggs for breakfast.  
 6 Hollie and Wu **never** listen to podcasts.  
 7 We **often** eat Japanese food with our friends.  
 8 I **don't often** read the newspaper.  
 9 Do they **always** speak English at home.  
 10 I **often** have a bottle of water in my bag.

- 5 1 Thailand  
 2 American  
 3 Australian  
 4 the USA  
 5 Italian  
 6 Turkey  
 7 Turkish  
 8 Switzerland  
 9 British  
 10 France  
 11 French  
 12 Brazilian

- 6 1 fourteen 5 twenty  
 2 four 6 ten  
 3 sixteen 7 eighty  
 4 twelve 8 five
- 7 1 tired 5 difficult  
 2 favourite 6 bad  
 3 friendly 7 happy  
 4 hot 8 young

- 8 1 jumper  
 2 suit  
 3 trousers  
 4 jeans  
 5 coat  
 6 jacket  
 7 T-shirt  
 8 dress

- 9 2 makes  
 3 leave  
 4 start  
 5 have  
 6 finish  
 7 have  
 8 watches  
 9 listen  
 10 go

- 10 1 help  
 2 moment / minute  
 3 surname  
 4 see  
 5 things  
 6 bad  
 7 Excuse  
 8 much  
 9 try  
 10 size  
 11 coffee  
 12 sugar  
 13 Anything  
 14 white  
 15 much

- 11 1 have 7 his  
 2 is 8 difficult  
 3 young 9 His  
 4 Mexico 10 don't  
 5 My 11 always  
 6 's 12 Do

## CUMULATIVE REVIEW 5-8

### GRAMMAR

- 1 2 it 5 us  
 3 her 6 it  
 4 them
- 2 1 in front of  
 2 on  
 3 next to  
 4 between  
 5 under  
 6 opposite
- 3 1 Who 5 Why  
 2 Where 6 When  
 3 What 7 How  
 4 When 8 What
- 4 1 Is there 6 there's  
 2 There are 7 some  
 3 any 8 an  
 4 aren't 9 a  
 5 There aren't 10 isn't
- 5 1 was 7 was  
 2 were 8 wasn't  
 3 was 9 wasn't  
 4 were 10 were  
 5 was 11 was  
 6 was 12 weren't
- 6 1 travelled, stayed  
 2 studied, didn't like  
 3 didn't watch, listened  
 4 tried, loved  
 5 cleaned, didn't help

### VOCABULARY

- 7 1 called 4 get  
 2 helps 5 thank  
 3 says
- 8 2 expensive 4 early  
 3 wrong 5 open
- 9 1 living  
 2 armchair  
 3 television  
 4 bed  
 5 kitchen  
 6 fridge  
 7 table
- 10 1 cleaned 4 fed  
 2 washed 5 did  
 3 had
- 11 face, eye, foot, tooth, nose, leg
- 12 1 want 5 walk  
 2 change 6 relax  
 3 Travel 7 Plan  
 4 stay 8 try



- 13A** 1 motorbike  
2 tram  
3 bike  
4 plane  
5 underground  
6 boat

- 13B** 1 bike 4 train  
2 bus 5 pass  
3 bus

- 14** 1 help 7 well  
2 course 8 wrong  
3 Can 9 hurt  
4 near 10 Single  
5 far 11 next  
6 matter

- 15** 1 travelled  
2 plane  
3 stayed  
4 her  
5 apartment  
6 walked  
7 was  
8 There was  
9 opposite  
10 tried  
11 it  
12 expensive

## CUMULATIVE REVIEW 1-8

### GRAMMAR

- 1** 1 I'm 5 Where  
2 I'm 6 I'm  
3 are 7 you  
4 I'm 8 not

- 2A** 1 a 2 a 3 a 4 a 5 an 6 a 7 an 8 a

- 2B** 1 bags  
2 books  
3 tablets  
4 cameras  
5 umbrellas  
6 sandwiches  
7 apples  
8 bottles of water

- 3** 1 have  
2 has  
3 have  
4 have  
5 has

- 4** 1 We're  
2 They're  
3 You're  
4 we  
5 they

- 5** 1 What 4 When  
2 How 5 Where  
3 Who / How / Where

- 6** 2 My father's house is really big.  
3 My sister's job is very difficult.  
4 Tunde is Chinara's son.  
5 That's my friend's office.  
6 Is that Karl's bike?  
7 Harry is Jon's cat.  
8 That isn't Bo-Bae's bag

- 7** 2 I really ~~not~~ **dislike** big cities. I like quiet places.  
3 Correct  
4 Kevin ~~hates~~ **loves** purple. It's his favourite colour.  
5 Ga Ram and I ~~very~~ **really** like jazz music.  
6 Do you ~~love~~ **like** our new teacher? I think he's good.  
7 We have three cats. We like ~~a lot~~ **a lot!**  
8 Correct

- 8** 1 works  
2 gets up  
3 travels  
4 takes  
5 checks  
6 listens  
7 walks  
8 starts  
9 doesn't have  
10 has  
11 goes  
12 makes  
13 watches  
14 doesn't look

- 9** 1 Is 5 Is  
2 isn't 6 isn't  
3 Does 7 Does  
4 does 8 doesn't

- 10** 1 Can Anthony drive?  
2 Can Noor swim  
3 Can you dance the tango?  
4 Can your children speak two languages?  
5 Can Flora ride a bike?

- 11** 1 three  
2 two  
3 tenth  
4 twenty-first  
5 thirty  
6 twenty-one

- 12** 2 Ankara is **a the** capital of Turkey.  
3 What's **a the** date today?  
4 Casper isn't a dancer. He's **the an** artist.  
5 Our Chinese class is at 10 o'clock in **a the** morning.  
6 Johanna is from **the** USA.

- 13** 1 Visit  
2 Book  
3 Don't take  
4 Don't forget

- 14** 1 bought 6 saw  
2 did 7 took  
3 had 8 knew  
4 made 9 slept  
5 went 10 got

- 15** 1 'd like  
2 like  
3 want  
4 'd like  
5 love  
6 'd like  
7 like  
8 would you like

- 16** 1 a 2 b 3 b 4 c 5 c 6 c  
7 b 8 c 9 b 10 c 11 a 12 c

## VOCABULARY

- 1** 1 Hey, Hi  
2 Good afternoon, Hello  
3 Bye, See you  
4 Good night, Goodbye
- 2** artist, singer, waiter, nurse, taxi driver, teacher, office worker, shop assistant
- 3** 1 parents  
2 father  
3 mother  
4 brother  
5 sisters  
6 wife  
7 husband  
8 children  
9 daughter  
10 son
- 4** 1 not very well  
2 OK  
3 good / fine  
4 good / fine  
5 very well  
6 great
- 5** 1 camera  
2 coffee machine  
3 guitar  
4 bike  
5 watch
- 6** 1 yellow  
2 blue  
3 white  
4 green  
5 red
- 7** 1 pencil  
2 notebook  
3 headphones  
4 keyboard  
5 mouse  
6 scissors  
7 plant  
8 pen  
9 cup of coffee  
10 photo
- 8** 1 cereal  
2 orange  
3 fruit juice  
4 egg  
5 tomato  
6 sandwich  
7 banana  
8 apple
- 9** 1 Tea  
2 Espresso  
3 Americano  
4 Mineral water  
5 Fruit juice
- 10** 1 swim  
2 paint  
3 throw  
4 sing  
5 remember
- 11** 1 post office  
2 shopping centre  
3 train station  
4 library  
5 hospital  
6 airport  
7 bus station  
8 supermarket  
9 museum  
10 cinema  
11 hotel  
12 school  
13 sports centre  
14 swimming pool
- 12** 1 entrance  
2 cash machine  
3 information desk  
4 exit  
5 lift  
6 stairs  
7 bus stop  
8 parking area
- 13** 1 met / saw  
2 had  
3 saw  
4 went  
5 did
- 14A** 1 What size are you?  
2 Can I have a sparkling water, please?  
3 How do you spell your surname?  
4 I don't feel well.  
5 The next train is at two o'clock.  
6 It's opposite the supermarket.
- 14B** 1 d 2 f 3 e 4 a 5 b 6 c 7 e 8 g
- 15** 1 b 2 a 3 c 4 b 5 a 6 c 7 a 8 c

**Pearson Education Limited**

KAO Two  
KAO Park  
Hockham Way  
Harlow, Essex  
CM17 9SR  
England  
and Associated Companies throughout the world.

**pearsonenglish.com/speakout3e**

© Pearson Education Limited 2022

All rights reserved; no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise without the prior written permission of the Publishers.

First published 2022

ISBN: 978-1-292-40734-0

Set in BBC Reith Sans

Printed and bound by Lego S.p.A

**Acknowledgements**

Written by Anna Richardson

**Image Credit(s):**

**123RF.com:** Anthony Baggett 39, chajamp 50, givaga 43, Igor Zakharevich 28, Kaspars Grinvalds 20, Leonid Andronov 5, 43, Olga Yastremska 31, picsfive 31, Ruth Black 31, saiko3p 39, Shao-Chun Wang 3; **Alamy Stock Photo:** Marmaduke St. John 47, Old Visuals 49, robertharding 41, Stefano Paterna 39, Timothy Hellum 43; **Getty Images:** 10'000 Hours 54, 4x6/iStock 22, A-S-L/E+ 28, Alex Eggermont/Image Source 55, Alexander Spatari/Moment 41, 53, Alvarog1970/iStock 57, andresr/E+ 6, andresr/iStock 37, Arnold Media/Photodisc 11, borchee/E+ 3, Cavan Images 40, davidgoldmanphoto/imagesource 5, Elva Etienne/Stone 57, Eric Audras /ONOKY 6, Erik Von Weber/The Image Bank 54, eriyalim/iStock 35, Goodboy Picture Company/E+ 32, Halfpoint/iStock 66, Hispanolistic/E+ 3, IGphotography/E+ 40, J\_Elgaard/iStock 40, janiecbros/E+ 55, Jason Hosking/Corbis 35, John Giustina/The Image bank 41, kali9/E+ 54, kate\_sept2004/E+ 12, kevinjeon00/E+ 21, Klaus Vedfelt/DigitalVision 25, Lane Oatey/Blue Jean Images 54, Luis Alvarez/DigitalVision 5, LUke1138/iStock 43, Marco Bottigelli/Moment 52, MarioGuti/iStock 3, martin-dm/E+ 54, Maskot 33, Michael H/DigitalVision 54, Mike Harrington/Stone 47, MoMo Productions/DigitalVision 13, Morsa Images/DigitalVision 6, 11, Morsa Images/Stone 66, Nick David/Stone 54, 57, Patagonik Works/Photodisc 49, Peathegee Inc/Tetra images 50, Petrified Collection/Stone 49, photography by Ulrich Hollmann/Moment 55, RUNSTUDIO/Moment 50, RyanJLane/E+ 55, South\_agency/E+ 47, staticnak1983/E+ 47, Stephen Lux/Image Source 13, svetikd/E+ 57, Thomas Barwick/DigitalVision 38, 53, Thomas Northcut/DigitalVision 7, Tim Robberts/DigitalVision 7, Uwe Krejci/DigitalVision 37, valentinrussanov/E+ 57, Waitforlight/Moment 3, Westend61 5, 7, 7, 47, 47, 50, 53, 54, xavierarnau/E+ 27; **Pearson Education Ltd:** Tsz-shan Kwok/ Pearson Education Asia Ltd 20; **Shutterstock:** 6, 8, 1000 Words 41, 498355 39, 5 second Studio 3, Africa Studio 40, Alex Staroseltsev 24, B Calkins 24, Baloncici 53, Bozena Fulawka 24, Brian A Jackson 8, Cara-Foto 29, Dima Sobko 20, Dionisvera 24, Dmytrenko Vlad 53, Don Mammoser 29, Ed Phillips 20, Fanya 22, Hassaya Thaochaiwong 35, Iasha 28, 31, imtmphoto 6, Jacob Lund 35, Karkas 31, 31, Kenneth Man 22, kritskaya 28, MaraZe 24, Natali Glado 5, Nick Starichenko 40, nortongo 28, outdoorsman 29, Pavel L Photo and Video. 40, Petr Malyshev 20, Pius Lee 43, Richie Chan 5, Rocksweeper 57, sagir 31, Sarawut Aiemsinsuk 20, Seregam 28, Seyms Brugger 29, Simon Dannhauer 29, Snapic\_PhotoProduction 6, studiolooco 22, tarzhanova 31, travellight 53, TravelStrategy 29, VGstockstudio 35, Vitaly Korovin 28, Walter Bilotta 24, Yellow Cat 28, Yevgen Romanenko 24, Zurbagan 24

**Cover Images:** *Front:* **Alamy Stock Photo:** Indiapicture; **Getty Images:** Brothers91, Luis Alvarez, MoMo Productions

**Illustrated by:** Szilvia Szakall (Beehive Illustration): 4, 17, 59, Andrew Pagram (Beehive Illustration): 9, 18, 19, 26, 31, 44, 45, 62, 67, Rupert Van Wyk (Beehive Illustration): 11, 34, 56, Liz Kay (NB Illustration): 38



# Speakout

## 3<sup>RD</sup> EDITION

Welcome to the third edition of our best-selling eight-level general English course for adults – *Speakout*. Developed in association with BBC Studios, this new edition has been completely revised based on feedback from *Speakout* users from all over the world.

*Speakout 3rd Edition* offers 100% new content, all-new video, and a fresh new look and feel, all underpinned by flexible components for in-class, online and hybrid use.

- Print version of the Online Practice activities
- Built on the Global Scale of English
- Regular language review sections and cumulative review pages to reinforce learning and help learners to track their progress
- Pronunciation and speaking activities
- Benchmark Test task types included

## Workbook

- Audio available online

## Also available

- Student's Book and eBook with Online Practice
- Student's eBook with Online Practice Access Code

*Speakout 3rd Edition* is fully accessible on your computer, tablet and mobile phone so that you can enjoy the full functionality of your course wherever you are.

[pearsonenglish.com/speakout3e](https://pearsonenglish.com/speakout3e)



### Learning English with Pearson?

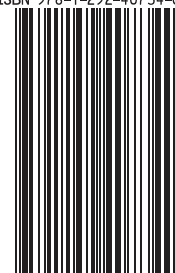
Access English language materials to support your learning journey.

### Ready to prove your English skills?

Get exclusive preparation materials for Pearson English exams.  
[pearsonenglish.com/exams-offer](https://pearsonenglish.com/exams-offer)

Speakout 3rd Edition	GSE	Benchmark	Pearson English International Certificate
A1	22-32	Benchmark Test A	A1
A2	30-38	Benchmark Test A	Level 1 (A2)
A2+	36-44	Benchmark Test A	Level 1 (A2)
B1	42-52	Benchmark Test B1	Level 2 (B1)
B1+	50-60	Benchmark Test B1	Level 2 (B1)
B2	58-67	Benchmark Test B2	Level 3 (B2)
B2+	64-76	Benchmark Test B2	Level 3 (B2)
C1-C2	73-90	Benchmark Test C	Level 4 (C1) & Level 5 (C2)

ISBN 978-1-292-40734-0



**Speakout**